The Contents of Gunnery.

Concerning the Proportion of the Weights of Iron, Lead, Stone, Gr. And
how by knowing the Weight of one Shot of Lead, to find the Weight of a-
nother of the like Diameter of Iron or Stone. Chap. 16. 124
Concerning Gunpowder, and to find what quantity will fill any Granado-Shell
or Cartridge. Chap. 17.
Concerning the Allowance of Powder for the Charge of any well Fornifed Gun
either Brafs or Iron, according to the Weight thereof, from one hundred
to ninery hundred Weight of Metal. Chap: 18. 1
Concerning Cartridges, how to make them, and fit them, fitting for the Bore,
or Chamber of any Piece of Ordnance. Chap. 19-
Concerning Carriages for Pieces of Ordnance, and how they should be made.
Chap. 20.
Concerning Shooting in great Ordnance, and how to Load your Gun Artifici-
The second sec
ally, either with Powder of Carriedge. Coap. 21. 134 How to give Level with a Piece of Ordnance to make a Shot at any mark within
Point blank. Chap. 22. Shewing how to amend a Shot, which (by fome accident) doth carry over, under,
or wide of the Mark intended Chap. 23. 135 Concerning a Gunner's Ruler, for the Elevating of any Piece of Ordnance to
' any degree of Mounture, fupplying the use of the Gunner's Quadrant.
Chap. 24 A Table, and the Use thereof, whereby you may give Level to a Piece of Ord-
nance, without the Gunners Rule or Quadrant, to any degree of Mounture
nance, without the Guillers state of Quadrani, to any degree of incidentic
under eleven degrees. Chap. 25
Concerning Shooting at Randon. Chap. 26.
How you may make a good at your Enemies Light in a dark night. Chap. 27. 139 How to make a perfect Shot in a dark night, at any mark (within the reach of
How to make a pericer shoe in a usik unging at any mark (within the reach of
the Piece) that you can fee in the day time. Chap 28. 139
How to make a good Shot at a Company of Souldiers paffing by ; or at a Ship
failing up a River. Chap. 29.
Some Reafons, Why one and the fame Piece of Ordnance at the fame Eleva-
tion, charged with the fame quantity of Powder, and directed to the felf
fame Mark, and discharged several times, shall have different Rainges.
Chap. 30: 140
Concerning Shooring in a Morter-Piece, and of Teveral Fire-Works, both for -
Sea and Land Service. Chap. 31.
The Measuring of Heights, Depths, and Distances, Gr. 152
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
TL.
1.00





(69)(89)(69)(69):(69)(69)(69)(69)(69) (79)(79)(79)\*(79):(79)(79)(79)(79)(79)

ТНЕ

# CONTENTS Of Gunnery.

Folio

THerein is declared the Names of all forts of Ordnance, and their Appurtenances, with an Explanation of their proper Terms; and divers Observations concerning Shooting in them. Chap. 1. 85 How a Gunner ought to be Qualified. Chap. 2. 00 Of fuch Necessary Implements and Instruments as a Gunner that hath charge of Guns or Artillery ought to be furnished with. Chap. 2. 91 Caurions that a Gunner ought to observe before he fire his Gun. Chap. 4. 92 Of Guppowder, and how it hash been made from time to time, and how it is made at this prefent. Chap. s. Of the Names of the feveral parts or members of a Piece of Ordnance Chap. 6.93 Of the feveral Pieces of Ordnance now in ufe. Chap. 7. How to find the Diameter of any Round Shot or Bullet, by knowing the Circumference: Or, By having the Circumference of a shor, to find the Diameter. Chap. 8. A Table shewing how to find the Diameter of any Circle or Ring of a Gun not exceeding 54 Inches : Of excellent use for the easie and exact finding of the length of the Difpart of any Gun : As also of the Diameter of any Shot

or Bullet: without Callopers, and also of Granado Shelfs. Chap. 9. 100 Concerning the Difparting of any Piece of Ordnance, and how to find the length of the Difpart. Chap. 10. 102

- How to know whether a Piece of Ordnance be truly bored or nor, when it is in its Carriage : and lying Horizontally. Chap. 11. 106
- Concerning Guns that are not truly bored; How to know what quantity of Powder muft be allowed for their Loading. Chap. 12. 108
- How to discover what Cracks, Flaws, or Honeycombs are in any Piece of Ordnance. Chap. 12.
- Concerning the Weight of Iron shor, and Granado shels. Chap. 14. 110 Concerning the following Table of Cube Boots. Chap. 15. 114

Concerning

The Contents of the Grammar.

How to manage a Fight at Sea, with the proper terms in a Fight largely exprefied, and the ordering a Navy at Sea. Chap. 13.
How they divide their lhares in a man of War, what Books and Infruments are fit for a Sea-man, with divers advertifements for young Gentlemen that intend to follow the Sea, and the ufe of the Petty Tally. Chap. 14.
An Alphabetical Table of the Names of all the Parts or Members of a Ship, and its Appurtenances, with the Number of the Page in which the Term, (orWord) there form d. is Explained at Large. Chap. 15.
Another Alphabetical Table, Explaining all the Principal Sea Terms used in work of a Ship, and Weathers. Chap. 16.

The

## PRINTER TOTHE READER, And all worthy Adventurers by Sea, and well-wifbers to NAVIGATION.

Here hath been much already written concerning the Art of War by Land, but nothing concerning the fame at Sea; yet perceiving the present occasion to require fomething of that kind, I have adventured to bring again to remembrance, those excellent Precepts and Directions, long fince published by Captain John Smith, which were almost worn out by time, and herein, if my defire to do good hath transported me beyond my felf, I intreat your excuse, and take for requital this bundle of many Ages Observations: which although they be not so punctually compiled as the Author could have wished, and it may be you expect, yet at present they cannot be much amended; If any will bestow that pains, I shall think him my friend, and honour his endeavours.

And now (fince it was the defire of the Experienced Author, to have this his Treatife amplified and made more useful, ) I have, in this Edition, caused to be added, An Alphabetical Table of the Names of all the Parts

ОГ

### The Printer to the Reader.

or Menabers of a Ship, and its Apartenances; with the number of the Page wherein they are at targe Explained: And also, another Alphabetical Table, wherein the principal Sea-Terms used in working of a Ship in all Winds and Weathers, and also in a Fight at Sea, are largely discoursed and explained.

And to make this Treatife, yet more useful for Seafervice (especially in time of War) I have caused to be added also, an Abstrast of the Art of Practical Gunnery; Wherein the Principles of that Art are plainly Taught both by Arithmetical Calculation, and by new Tables ready Calculated. Together with the manner of Shooting in Morter Pieces; The making of Granados, Petards and other Fireworks useful in War, both at Sea and Land: And by way of Appendix, several Geometrical ways, to take Heights, Depths, and Dislances; accessible or inaccessible. All which are freely communicated for the benefit of his Country, and the good of Navigators and Gunners:

And as I fhall find these Essays of mine accepted, I shall be encouraged farther to accommodate them with the Mathematical part of Navigation.

*B. N*.

тне

# CONTENTS Of the Grammar.

Folio Folio Folio Folio Folio Folio Folio Folio How to build a Ship, with the definition of all the principal names of every part of her, and her principal timbers, alfo how they are fixed one to another, and the reations of their ufe. Chap. 2. How to proportion the Mafts and Y ards for a Ship, by her Beam and Keel Ch. 3. 15 The names of all the Mafts, Tops and Y ards belonging to a Ship. Chap. 4. 17

- How all the Tackling and Rigging of a Ship is made faft one to another, with the Names and Reafons of their ufe. Chap. 5. What doth belong to the Boats and Skiff, with the definition of all those thirteen
- What doth belong to the Boats and Skin, with the dehaldon of an those time to Ropes, which are only properly called Ropes belonging to a Ship or a Boat, and their use. Chap. 6.

The names of all forts of Anchors, Cables and Sails, and how they bear their proportions, with their ufe. Alfo how the Ordnance fhould be placed, and

the Goods flowed in a Ship. Chap. 7. 29 The charge and duty of the Captain of a Ship, and every Office and Officer in a man of War. Chap. 8. 34

Proper Sea-terms for dividing the Company at Sea, and fleering, failing and moaring a Ship in fair weather or in a ftorm. Chap. 9.

- Proper Sea terms for the Winds, Ebbs, Floods, and Eddies, with their definitions, and an effimate of the depth of the Sea, by the height of the Hills and largencis of the Earth. Chap. 10. 46.
- Proper Sea-terms belonging to the good or bad condition of Ships, how to find them and amend them. Chap. 11.
- Confiderations for a Sea-Captain in the choice of his Ship, and in placing his Ordnance : In giving Chafe, Boarding, and entring a man of War like him.
- felf, or defending a Merchant-man. Chap. 12.

54 How

ftep upon the lower Deck, and is in the nature of a Windis. to wind or weigh up the Anchors, Sails, Tap-mafts, Ordnance, or any thing ; it is framed in divers Squares, with holes thorow them, thorow which you put your Capftain Capitain-Bars. Bars, for as many men as can ftand ar them to thruft it about, and is called manning the Capitain. The main body The Spindle. of it is called the Spindle. The Whelps are fhort pieces Whelps. of wood made fast to it; to keep the Cable from coming too high in the turning about. The Paul is a short piece of Paul. Iron made fast to the Deck, refting upon the Whelps to keep the Capitain from recoiling, which is dangerous, but in great Ships they have two, the other standing in the same manner betwixt the fore-maft and the main, to heave upon the leare-Jeare Capitain rope, and is called the geare Capitain, to ftrain any Rope. or hold off by, when we weigh Anchor, to heave a head, or upon the Viol, which is when an Anchor is in ftiff ground we cannot weigh it, or the Sea goeth fo high the main Capítain cannot purchafe in the Cable, then we take a Hawfer opening one end, and fo puts into it Nippers fome feven or eight fathom diftant from each other, wherwith we bind the Hawfer to the Cable, and fo brings it to the Jeare Capftain to heave upon it, and this will purchase more than the main Capitain can. The Dinil is faitened together at both The Viol. ends with an eye or two, with a Wall-knot, and feafed together. A Windas is a Square piece of Timber like a A Windas. Role before the fore Castle in finall Ships, and forced about with handspikes, for the same use as is the Capstain. The Pamp.

What are the parts of a Pump you may fee in every The Brake. place, the handle we call the Brake, the Pumps Can is a The Can. great Can we pour water into Pumps to make it pump. The Daile is a Trough wherein the water doth run over The Daile. the Docks: But in great Ships they use thained Dumns which will go with more eafe, and deliver more water. The A Bur-Pump. Dutch menuie a Burre Bump by the Ship-fide, wherein is only a long staffe with a Burre at the end, like a Gunners Spunge, to pump up the Billage water, that by reafon of the breadth of the Ships floor cannot come to the Well: In pumping



8

Chained.

Pumps.

certain framed posts, much of the fame nature upon the thore to build a Pinnace, a Carch, a Frigar, or Boat, or. To those Docks for building belongs their Wood-yards, with Saw-pits and all forts of timber i but the Malts and Yards are chained together in fome greater water to keep them from rocking, and in featon : Allo a Crab is neceffary, which is an Engine of wood of three claws placed on the ground in the nature of a Capitern for the lanching of thips or heaving them into the Dock.

#### CHAP. TI.

How to build a Ship, with the definitions of the names of every part of her Principal Timbers, and how they are fixed one to another, with the reasons of their sle.

The Keel.

2

Crab.

The Stem. The Stern. The falhionpicces. The Ranges

The Limberholes.

He first and lowest Timber in a ship is the steel, to which is fastened all the rest : this is a great tree or more, hewn to the proportion of her burden, laid by a right line in the bottom of the Dock, or Stocks. At the one end is Skarfed into it the stem, which is a great timber wrought compating, and all the butt-ends of the planks forwards are fixed to it. The Stern polit is another great Timber, which is ler into the Keel at the other and fomewhat floping, and from it doch rife the two faithinpieces like a pay of great horns, to those are fastened all the planks that reach to the after end of the Ship, but before you aleany planks, they lay the fittings, called floor timbers or ground rimbers, thwart the keel thro those you cut your Limiterholes to bring the water to the well for the pump, then fe of them is when the Ship is built to draw inthem a long hair rope, by pulling it from Stem to Stem, to. forwas them, and keep them clean from choaking. Thole

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

Culberstailed is letting one Timber into another, in fuch Culverstailed, fort that they cannot flip out, as the darling ends are fixed Carlings. in the Beams, and Carlings are certain Timbers lieth along the Ship from beam to beam, on those the ledges do reft, whereunto the Planks of the Decks are fastened. The Car Carling knees. ling fings are also timbers comes thwart the Ship from the fides of the Hatches way, betwixt the two Malts, and bears up the Deck on both fides, and on their ends lieth the tom- Commings. mings of the Hatches, which are those Timbers and Planks which bears them up higher than the Decks to keep the water from running down at the Hatches; also they fit Loope- Loopholes. holes in them for the close fights, and they are likewile a great eafe for men to ftand upright if the Decks be low. The **Batches** way is when they are open where the Goods are Hatches way. lowered that way right down into the homle, and the Batchest are like Trap doors in the midst of the Decks, before the Main-Maft, by certain Rings, to take up or lay down at your pleafure.

A Souttle hatch is a little Hatch doth cover a little A Souttle. Square-hole we call the Scuttle, where but one man alone can go down into the Ship, they are in diversplaces of the Ship whereby men pafs from Deck to Deck, and there is alfo fmall Scuttles Grated, to give light to them betwixt Decks, and for the fmoak of the Ordnance to pass away by. The familieat is a great Block wherein is three fhivers, into Ramshead which are passed the Halyards, and at the end of it in a hole is reved the ties, and this is only belonging to the foreend Main Halyard; to this belong the fore-finight, and The forethe main Hnight, upon the fecond Deck taft bolted to the Knight, Beams. They are two fhort thick pieces of wood, com- The mainmonly carved with the head of a man upon them, in those Knight. are four shivers apiece, three for the Halyards, and one for the top-rope to run in : and **Encycles** are small pieces of Knevels. Wood nailed to the infide of the Ship, to belay the Sheats and Racks unto.

The Capitaine is a great piece of Wood, ftands upright Capitaine. upon the Deck, abaft the main Malt, the foot ftanding in a itep

She was built of Cedar.

6

Clamps.

Decks. A half Deck. A Quarter-Deck.

A Cambered Deck. To fink a Deck To raile a Deck.

Chain-waile.

Gun waile.

The Ships Quarters.

fuch things, befides divers others fo ufeful that without them and long Iron-spikes and Nails nothing can be well done : yet I have known a Ship built, hath failed to and again over the main Ocean, which had not fo much as a Nail of Iron in her, but only one Bolt in her Keel.

Now your risings are above the first Orlop as the Clammer are under it, which is long thick Planks like them, fore and aft on both fides, under the ends of the Beams and Timbers of the fecond Deck or Orlop, or the third Deck or Orlop.or the third Deck which is never called by the name of Orlop, and yet they are all but Decks; also the half Deck and Quarter Deck, whereon the Beams and Timbers bear, are called rifings. A fluth Deck is when from Stem to Stern, it A flush Deck. lies upon a right line fore and aft, which is the best for a Man of War, both for the men to help and fuccour one another as for the using of their arms, or remounting any difmounted Piece, becaufe all the Ports on that Deck are on equal height. which cannot be without Beds and much trouble, where the Deck both camber or lie compassing. To fink a Deck is a to lay it lower to raile a Deck to put it higher, but have a care you fo cut your Port-holes, that one piece lie not right over another for the better bringing them to your mark.

The half Deck is from the main Maft to the Steerage. and the Quarter-Deck from that to the Masters Cabin called the Round House, which is the utmost of all, but you must understand all those Works are brought up together, as Bend, or waile, near equally as may be from bend to bend, or maile to maile, which are the outmost Timbers on the Ship-fides, and are the chief strength of her fides, to which the Foot hooks. Beams and Knees, are bolted, and are called the first fecond. and third Bend; but the Chain-maile is a broad timber fet out amongst them, a little above where the Chains and Shrouds are failtned together, to foread the Shrouds the wider, the better to fuccour the Masts. Thus the Sides and Decks are wrought till you come at the Bun-maile, which is the upmoft waile goeth about the upmoft ftrake or feame of the upmolt Deck about the Shing malie, and the Shing Auarter is from the main Mast attward. CulThe Seamons Grammar.

Those ground timbers do give the floor of the Ship, be. The Floor. ing firaight, faving at the ends they begin to compais, and there they are called the fungheads, and doth direct the Rungheads. Sincen or aBouild of the Foot-hooks and Navel timbers, for Mould. there doth begin the compats and bearing of the Ship, thole skaring. are Sharfed into the ground Timbers, which is one piece of wood let into another, or fo much wood cut away from the one as from the other, for when any of those Timbers are not long enough of themfelves, they are skarfed in this manner to make two or three as one: Thole next the Keel are called the ground Foot-hooks, the other the upper Foothooks; but first lay your Heriefon over your floor Timbers, which is another long tree like the Heet, and this lying Foot-hooks. Recicion. within as the other without, must be fast bound together with ftrong iron bolts thorow the Timbers and all, and on those are all the upper works railed, when the foot hooks are skatted as is faid, and well boulted, when they are planked up to the Orlop they make the Ship Domie, and thole Timbers Ribs. Howle: in general are called the Ships Title, becaufe they reprofent sleepers. the carkais of any thing that hath Ribs. The Dietnets run before and after one each fide the Keelelon, on the floor well bolted to the Foot-hooks, which being thus bound do Arong- Spurkin. then each other. The Southity are the fpaces betwixt the Timbers alongit the Shipfide in all parts, but them in Howle below the Sleepers, are broad boards which they take up to clear the Spurkits', if any thing get betwixt the Timbers

The Garboyn sthe first plank next the Keel on the out- The Garbord fide, the Barbord Btrake is the first feam next the Keel, Rifing-timbers your Himme timbers are the books, or ground timbers and toot-hooks placed on the Keel, and as they rife by little and little, to doth the mun of the Ship from the floor which is that part of the Ship under water, which comes narrower by degrees from the floor timbers along the fferrapolt, called the Ships way altward, for according to her Reathe will frear well or ill, by realon of the quickness or flownels of the water coming to the Rudder; Now all those B 2 planks

Garbord-ftrak-

The Rug.

that which cannot come to the pump, we fay also the is bilged

when the strikes on a Rock, an Anchors Floor, or any

planks under water, as they rife and are joyned one end to Planks. another, the fore end is called the But and in all Ships : but But-ends. in great Ships they are commonly most carefully bolted, for if one of thole ends should spring, or give way, it would be a great troublefome danger to ftop fuch a leak, the other parts of those planks are made fast with good Gree mails Tree-nails. and Crunnions of well feafoned Timber, thorow the Tim-Trunnions. bers or Ribs, but those planks that are fastened into the Ship Itern are called **IDhoodings**. Whoodings. The gathering of those works upon the Ships quarter un-The Tuck. der water is called the Cuth, if it lie too low it makes her have a fat quarter, and hinders the quick paffage of the water to the Rudder; if too high, the must be laid out in that part. Transome. elle she will want bearing for her after-works. The Granfome is a Timber lies thwart the ftern, betwixt the two fafhion pieces, and doth lay out the breadth of the Ship at the Buttocks. Buttocks, which is her breadth from the Tuck upwards, and according thereto her breadth or narrownefs, we fay the hath a narrow or broad Buttock : The fashion-pieces before fpoken of, are the two outmost timbers on either fide the ftern, excepting the **Counters**. The Ships Hake is fo much Rake. of her **Bull** as hangs over both ends of the Keell, fo much The Hull. as is forward is faid, the rakes fo much forward, and fo in like manner aftward; by the Hull is meant, the full bulk or body of a Ship without mafts or any rigging from the Stem to the Stern : The Rake forward is near half the length of the Keell, and for the Rake aftward about the forepart of her Rake forward, but the fore Rake is that which gives the Ship good way, and makes her keep a good wind, but if fhe have not a full Bow, it will make her pitch her head much into the Sea; if but a fmall Rake forward, the Sea will meet her to fast upon the Lowes, the will make fmall way, and if her Stern be upright as it were, the is called Bluffe, or Bluffe. Bluff headed. A Ship Billage is the breadth of the Bluffe-headed Billage. floor when the doth lie aground, and Billage-water is

When you have berthed or brought her up to the Dlanks, Planks.

which are those thick Timbers which goeth fore and aft on each fide, whereon doth lie the beams of the first Orlop Beams. which is the first floor to fupport the Planks, doth cover the Howle, those are great cross timbers, that keeps the Shipsfides afunder, the main beam is ever next the main Maft, where is the Ships greatest breadth, the rest from this is called the first, second, third, fourth, oc. forward or aftward Beams. Great Ships have a tire of Beams under the Orlop, whereon lies no Deck, and great pofts and binders called Ifis Riders. **derg** from them to the Keel in Howle only to ftrengthen all. But the beams of the Orlop is to be bound at each end with fufficient lines, which is a crooked piece of wood bowed like Knees. a Knee, that binds the Beams and Foot-hooks, being bolted together, fome ftand right up and down, fome along the Ship, and are used about all the Decks, some fawed or hewed to that proportion, but them which grow naturally to that fafhion are the boft.

Lay the Orlop with good Plank, according to her proportion, fo level as may be, is the beft in a Man of War, because all the **Potts** may be of fuch equal height, fo that Ports. every Piece may lerve any Port, without making any Beds Beds. or Platforms to raife them, but first bring up your work as before to the fecond Deck or Orlop, and by the way you may cut your number of Port-holes according to the greatnels of your Ship ; by them faften your fing bolts, for the Ring bolts Tackles of your Ordnance you use Ringbolts allo for bringing the Planks and Walls to the Ship fide, and Set bolts for Set-bolts. forcing the Works and Planks together : Clinch bolts are clinch bolts. clinched with a rivering hammer for drawing out. But man-bolts are to jaggered that they cannot be drawn out. Rag-bolts. fore lock bolts hath an eye at the end, whereinto a Fore. Forelock-bolts lock of Iron is driven to keep it from frarting back frent bolds are beat into the outfille of a Ship, with the long head Fend-bolts. to fave her fidesfrom galling against other Ships. Dite-bolts Drive-bolts. is a long piece of Iron to drive out a Tree nail, or any B3 : fuch

thing

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

5

thing that breaks her Planks or Timbers to fpring a Leak.

#### 16

The Steps.

Partners.

Cotes.

Cheeks.

The Cap.

Tarpawling.

### The Seamans Grammar.

every yard. The fore Mast is to be in length t of the main Maft, which will be 20 yards wanting one ; part of a yard, and 20 inches thorow. The Boultforet mult ever be equal with the fore-Maft. The Mifen-Maft half the length of the Main Maft, which will be 12 yards long, and 12 inches diameter. Now as you take the proportion of the Maft from the Beam or breadth of the Ship, fo do you the length of the yards from the Kcel.

Thefe Masts have each their Stepg in the Ship, and their Dartners at every Dock where thorow they pass to the Keel, being ftrong Timbers bolted to the Beams in circling the Malts, to keep them fleady in their fleps faft wedged for rowing; yet some Ships will not fail fo well as when it doth play a little, but that is very dangerous in foul weather. Their Cotes are pieces of tarred Canvas, or a Tarpawling put about them and the Rudder to keep the water out. At the top of the fore Milt and main-Maft are fpliced Checks. or thick clamps of wood, thorow which are in each two The Hounds. holes called the Hounds, wherein the Tyes dorun to hoife the yards, but the Top -Maft hath but one hole or Hound, and one tye. Every Mail alfo hath a Cap if a top; which is a piece of fquare Timber with a round hole in it to receive, the top Mafts or Flag staffe, to keep them steady and strong, Croffe-trees. least they be born by the board in a stiffe-gale. The Groffetrees are allo at the head of the Malts, one let into another crofs, and ftrongly boulted with the Treffel-trees to keep Treffel trees. up the top-Mafts which are faitened in them, and those are at the tops of each Mafts; all the Mafts fland upright but the Boultspret which lyeth along over the Beak-head, and

Pillow. An example of the Yards by the Kecl.

that Timber it relteth on is called the Dillow Now for the yards, suppose the Ship be 76 foot at the -Keel, her main yard must be 21 yards in length, and in thickness but 17. inches. The fore-yard 19 yards long. and 15 inches diameter or thick. The foret-fail yard 16 yards long, and but 9 inches thick, and your Milen yard to long as the Maft, the Top yards bears half proportion to the main, and Fore-yard, and the Top gallants, the half to thern,

#### The Sea-mans Grammar.

pumping they use to take spels, that is, fresh men to relieve them, and count how many ftrokes they pump each watch, whereby they know if the Ship be flanch, or tight, or how her Leaks increase. The Pump fucks is when the water be- The Pumping out, it draws up nothing but froth and wind. They have fack. allo a little Pump made of a Cane, a little piece of hollow wood or Latten like an Elder gun, called a Bare Dunap, A Barc-Pump. to Pump the Beer or Water out of the Cask, for at Sca we use no Taps, and then stave the Cask to make more room, and packeth the Pipe staves or boards up as close as may be in other Cask till they use them.

The Shuppers are little holes close to all the Decks the. The Skupper. row the Ships fides, whereat the water doth run out when you pump or wash the Decks : the Shupper leathers skupper leaare nailed over those holes upon the lower Deck to keep thers. out the Sea from coming in, yet give they way for it to run out : Skupper nails are little fhoit ones with broad Skupper nails. heads, made purposely to nail the Skupper-leathers, and the cotes of Masts and Pumps. The Mais is that part of The Waist. the Ship betwixt the main Malt and the Fore-caftle, and the Maist-boards are fet up in the Ships Waist, betwixt the waist-boards. Gun-waile and the Mailf tres, but they are most used in Wailf-tress. Boats, fet up alongit their fides to keep the Sea from breaking in.

There are usually three Ladders in a Ship: the entering The entering-Hadder is in the Wailt, made formally of wood, and ano. Ladder. ther out of the Gallery made of Ropes to go into the Boat Gallery-- by in foul weather, and the third at the Beak-head, made Ladder. fast over the Doulifpret to get uponit, only used in great Ladder. Boultfpret-Ships-

It were not amils now to remember the Fore-raffle. The Forebeing as ufeful a place as the reft, this is the forepart of the calle. Ship above the Decks over the Bowe, there is a broad Bowe Bowe. and a narrow Bowe, fo called according to the broadness or the thinnefs: the Bowe is the broadeft part of the Ship before, compassing the Stem to the Loufe, which reacheth far Loufe, as the Bulk head of the Fore caftle extendeth. Against the Bowe

Bowe is the first breach of the Sea, if the Bowe be too broad, Cut a Feather. fhe will feldom carry a bone in her mouth, or rut a feather, that is, to make a fome before her: where a well bowed Ship fo fwiftly preffeth the water, as that it foameth, and in the datk night sparkleth like fire. If the Bowe be too narrow, as before is faid, the pitcheth her head into the Sea, to that the mean is the beft if her after-way be answerable. The Daufes are those great round holes before, under the Beak-Haules. head, where commonly is used the Castles when you come to an Anchor, the bold or high Haufe is the beft, for when they lie low in any great Sea, they will take in very much water, the which to keep out, they build a circle of Plank either abaft or before the main Mast called the Manner : Manger. and a Haufe plug at Sea, now the Fore caffle doth cover all those being built up like a half Deck, to which is fixed the Beak-head, and the Pion is the Deck abaft the fore-Prow. caftle, whereon lieth the Prow pieces. The Beak head is without the Ship before the fore-Ca-The Beakftle, fupported by the main knee, fastened into the Stem. head.

all painted and carved as the Stern, and of great ufe, as well for the grace and countenance of the Ship, as a place for men to ease themselves in. To it is fastened the Coller of the main flay, and the fore tacks there brought aboard : alfo the ftanding for rigging and trimming the Sprete fail-Combe. geare, under the midft of it is the **Comb**, which is a little piece of wood with two holes in it to bring the fore tacksaboard. The Bits are two great pieces of Timber, and the Crofpiece. **Crospiece** goeth thorough them, they are ordinarily placed abaft the Manger in the Ships loofe, to belay the Cable thereto when you ride at Anchor : Their lower parts are fastened to the Riders, but the middle part in great Ships are bolted to two great Beams crofs to the Bowes, and yet in extraordinary frorms we are glad to make fail the Cable to the main Maft for ftrengthening of the Bits and fafeip of the Bowes, which have in great ftorms been torne from the Ships. The David is a fhort piece of Timber, at the end whereof in a notch they hang a block in a ftrap called the fill:

The Sea-mans Grammar.

#### CHAP. III.

How to proportion the Masts and Yards, for a Ship, by her Beam and Keel.

W Hen a Ship is built, fhe fhould be mafted, where A Ship over-in is a great deal of experience to be used fo well marted. as art; for if you Over malle her, either in length or bignefs, fhe will lie too much down by a wind, and labour too much a hull, and that is called a Caunt-Taunt-mafied. Under-inafled. malt, but if either too fmall or too short, she is Undermassed or low-masted, and cannot bear fo great a fait as should give her her true way. For a man of war, a well ordered Taunt-malt is best, but for a long voyage, a short-mast will bear more Canvas, and is lefs fubject to bear by the board : Their Rules are divers, becaufe no Artift can build a Ship fo truly to proportion, neither fet her Mafts, but by the trial of her condition, they may be impaired or amend. ed : suppose a Ship of 300 Tuns be 29 foot at the Beam, if An example. her main mast be 24 inches diameter, the length of it mast be 24 yards, for every inch in thickness is allowed a yard in length, and the fore mast 22 inches in thickness, mult be 22 yards in length; your Bowle fpret both in length and thickness must be equal to the fore mast, the Misen 17 yards in length, and 17 inches diameter.

But the Hule most used is to take the ? parts of the The rule most breadth of the Ship, and multiply that by three, it will give used. you to many foot as your Main-mall should be in length, the bignels or thickness will bear it also, allowing an inch for a yard ; but if it be I made mait, or arme mait, that is A made Maft, greater than one Tree, it must be more; for example, file or an arme pose the Ships breadth 30 foot, four fifths of 30 foot are 24 Mast. foot, fo you find the main Malt must be 24 yards long, for every yard is 3 foot 24 inches thorow, allowing an inch to every

25

David

Bics.

pers, they be all of fix inch plank for binding within. The reft for the fparring up of the works of fquare three inch plank. Lay the beams of the Orlope, if the be 400 Tuns at ten foot deep in howle, and all the beams to be bound with two knees at each end, and a ftardard knee at every beams end upon the Orlope, all the Orlope to be laid with fquare three inch plank, and all the planks to be tree-nailed to the beams.

Six foot fhould be between the beams of the Deck and Orlope, and ten ports on each fide upon the lower Orlope, all the binding between them should be with three inch or two inch-plank, and the upper Deck should be laid with fo many beams as are fitting, with knees to bind them, Taying that Deck with spruce Deal of thirty foot long; the sap cut of, and two inches thick, for it is better then, any other.

Then for the Captains Cabin or great Cabin, the Steerage, the half Deck, the Round houle, the Fore-caftle, and to bind an end with the Capftern and all things fitting for the Sea, the Smiths work, the carving, joyning, and painting excepted, are the principal things I remembred to be obferved: for a *Charter-party* betwixt the Merchant, the Mafter, and the Owner, you have Prefidents of all forts in most Scriveners shops.



#### The Sea-mans Grammar.

**Fifth Morth**, by which they hale up the flook of the Anchor Fifth block. to the Ships Bowe, it is put out betwixt the Cat and the Loofe, and to be removed when you pleafe. The **Cat** is alfo Cat. a flort piece of timber aloft, right over the Haufe; in the end it hath two flivers in a block, wherein is reaved a Rope, to which is faftened a great hook of Iron, to trice up the Anchor from the Haufe to the top of the Fore-caftle.

A Dulls head is like a feeling or a wall of boards thwart A Bulk-head. the Ship, as the Gun-room, the great Cabin, the bread room, the quarter Deck, or any other fuch division; but them which doth make close the Fore-caftle, and the half-Deck, the Marriners call the **Cubbyingerheads**, wherein are pla- Cubbridgeced murtherers, and abaft Falcons, Falconets, or Robinits to head. clear the Decks fore and aft fo well as upon the Ships fides, to defend the Ship and offend an enemy. **Sockets** are the Sockets. holes wherein the Pintels of the Murderers or Fowlers go into. The hollow Arching betwixt the lower part of the Gallery and the Transome, is called the **Iower Counter**; Low Counter. the **upper Counter** is from the Gallery to the Arch of the Upper Counter found Houfe, and the **Decks** are little carved Knees to fupport the Galleries.

The Stearage room, is before the great Cabin, where he The Stearage. that fleareth the Ship doth always stand, before him is a Great Cabin. fquare Box nailed together with Wooden Pins, called a Bittacle, becaule Iron-nails would attract the Compais, Bittacle. -this is built fo close, that the Lamp or Candle only sheweth light to the Stearage, and in it always flands the Compass; The Compass. which every one knows is a round Box, and in the midft of the bottom a sharp Pin called a Centre whereon the Fly doth play, which is a round piece of Pail board, with a fmall wyer under it touched with the Load-stone, in the midst of it is a little brass Cap that doth keep it level upon the Center. On the upper part is painted 22' points of the Compass covered with Glass to keep it from duft, breaking, or the wind this Box doth hang in two or three brafs Circles, to fixed they give fuch way to the moving of the Ship that ftill the Box will ftand fteady ; there is also a Dark Com-C 2 pals,

12

#### The Sea-mans Grammar.

A dark Com- pals, and a Compals for the bariation, yet they are but as pats. the other, only the dark Compass hath the Points black and A Compais white, and the other only touched for the true North and for Variation. South. Upon the Bittacle is alfo the Crabas, which is a The Travas. little round board full of holes upon Lines like the Compass, upon which by the removing of a little flick they keep an account, how many Glaffes (which are but half hours) The Whipthey fteer upon every point. The Whip faffe is that piece flaffe. of wood like a ftrong staffe the Steersman or Helmsmen hath always in his hand going thorough the flowl, and then The Rowle. made fast to the Tiller with a Ring. The Ciller is a ftrong piece of wood made fast to the The Tiller.

futder, which is a great timber fomewhat like a Plank, Ruader. made according to the burthen of the Ship, and hung at the Stern upon Hooks and Hinges, they call pintels and Pintels. G. dgions, or Gudgions, or fudder-irons. The Tiller playeth in the Rudder-Irons. Oun room over the Ordnances by the Whip flaff; whereby The Gunthe Rudder is fo turned to and fro as the Helmefman plea-100m. feth, and the Cat-holes are over the Ports, right with the Cat-holes. Capftain as they can, to heave the Ship a ftern by a Cable or a Haufer called a Stern-faft. On each fide the Steerageroom are divers Cabins, as also in the great Cabin, the quarter Deck, and the Round-houfe, with many convenient Seats or **Locherg** to put any thing in, as in little Cup-Lockers. boards.

The Breadriom Cook-room.

STOR.

The Brad-room is commonly under the Gun-room. well dried or plated. The Cooli room where they drefs their Victuals may be placed in divers places of the Ship, as fometimes in the Hould, but that oft spoileth the victuals by reason of the heat, but commonly in Merchant-men it is the Fore-caftle, effectially being contrived in Furnaces; befides in chafe their stern is that part of the Ship they most use in fight, but in a Man of War they fight moft with their Prow, and it is very troublelome to the ufe of his Ordnance, and very dangerous lying over the Powder room, fome do place it over the Hatches way, but that as the Ltewards room are ever to be contrived according 01

#### The Sea mans Grammar.

to the Ships imployment, &c. Calking is beating Ohum Calking. into every feam or betwixt Plank, and Plank, and Olium Okum. is old Ropes torn in pieces like Towze Match, or Hurds of Flax, which being clofe beat into every feam with a Calking-Tron and a Mallet, which is a hammer of wood Calking-I; on and an Iron chiffel, being well Paper over with hot pitch, Paying. doth make her more tight then it is pollible by joyning Plank to Plank. Graping is only under water, a white Graving. mixture of Tallow, Sope and Brimitone; or Train-oil, Rofin, and Brimftone boiled together, is the beft to preferve her calking, and make her glib or flippery to pass the water; and when it is decayed by weeds, or Barnacics, Barnacks, which is a kind of fill like a long red worm, will eat tho- or Wormes. row all the Planks if the be not theathed, which is as cafing the Hull under water with Tar, and Haire, close covered over with thin boords fast nailed to the Hull, which though the Worm pierce, fhe cannot endure the Tar; Breaming her, is but washing or burning of all the filth Broming or with reeds or broom, either in a dry dock or upon her **Ca**. Breaming. reene; which is, to make her fo light as you may bring her Carcene. to lie on the one fide fo much as may be in the calmest water you can, but take heed you overfet her not; and this is the best way to breame Ships of great Burthen, or those have but fourtharp Flores for fear of brufing or overfetting Parling. ling is most used upon the Decks and half Decks; which is, to take a lift of Canvas folong as the feam is you would parsle, being first well calked, then pour hot pitch upon it, and it will keep out the water from paffing the feams. There remains nothing now as I can remember to the building the Hull of the Ship, nor the definition of her most proper terms, but only feeling the Cabins and fuch other parts as you pleafe, and to bind an end with all things fitting for the Sea, as you may read in the Covenants betwixt the Carpenter and the Owner, which are thus:

If you would have a Ship built of 400 Tuns, the requires a plank of 4 inches: if 300 Tuns, 3 inches : small thirs 2 inches, but none lefs. For clamps, middle bands, and fice-

pers,

2	A
-	~

Latchets.

Lafhing.

hock.

Chefters.

Enertels.

Sinner.

Boule.

The Seamans Grammar.

are also small lines like Crow-feet reeved through a block at the Top maft head, and fo comes down by the Maft to the Deck ; but the Top-fail Martnets are made fast to the head of the Top gallant maft, and cometh but to the top, where it is haled and called the Top-martnets, they ferve to bring that part of the Leech next the Yards arm up close to the Yard. Atchets are finall lines fowed in the Bonnets and Drablers like loops to lash or make fast the Bonnet to the course, or the courfe to the Drabler, which we call laffing the Bonnet to the course, or the Drabler to the Bonnet. The Unfe that The Loofeis a tackle with two hooks, one to hitch into a chingle of the main or fore-Sail, in the Bolt-rope in the Leech of the Sail by the clew, and the other to ftrap fpliced to the Cheffres to foulf or pull down the Sail to fuccour the tacks in a fliff-gale of wind, or take off or put on a Bonnet or a Deabler, A Bonner. which are two short fails to take off or put to the fore-A Drabler. A Courfe. Course or the main, which is the fore Sail, or main-Sail.

The **linabe** line is a Rope hath one end fastened to the A Knave-line. crofs trees, and fo comes down by the ties to the Rams-head, to which is feafed a fmall piece of wood fome two foot long with a hole in the end, whereunto the line is reeved, and brought to the Ships fide, and haled taut to the Railes to keep the ties and Halyards from turning about one another when they are new. Hnettels are two Rope yarnes twifted together, and a knot at each end, whereunto to feafe a Rope-yarnes. block, a rope, or the like. Hope-paring are the Yarnes of any rope untwifted, they ferve to farve fmall ropes, or make Sinnet, Mats, Plats, or Caburns, and make up the Sails at the Yards-arms.

Sinnet is a ftring made of Rope yarn commonly of two, four, fix, eight or nine ftrings platted in three parts, which Mats or Panch. being beat flat they use it to farve ropes or Mats. That avhich we call a Danch, are broad clouts, woven of Thrums and Sinnet together, to fave things from galling about the main and fore-Yards at the Ties, and also from the Masts, and upon the Boltfpret, Loufe, Beake head or Gunwaile, to fave the clewes of the Sails from galling or fretting. Caburn

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

them, but this rule is not abfolute, for if your Mafts be taunt, your Yards must be the shorter; if a low Mast, the longer : but this is supposed the best, to have the main Yard 1 parts of her Keel in length : the top-Yard ; of the main-Yard ; and the main-Yard for bignets 1. parts of an inch, for a yard in length. The length of the fore Yard ; of the main Yard: the crossjack-Yard and Spretfail Yard to be of a length, but you must allow the Missen-Yard and Spret. fail Yard ; inch of thickness to a yard in length. But to give a true Arithmetical and Geometrical proportion for the building of all forts of Ships, were they all built after one mould, as alfo of their Mafts, Yards, Cables, Cordage, and Sails, were all the ftuff of like goodness, a methodical rule as you fee might be projected ; but their lengths, breadths, depths, rakes and burthens are fo variable and different. that nothing but experience can possibly teach it.

#### CHAP IV.

#### The names of all the Masts, Tops, and Yards belonging to a Ship.

He Boul fpret, the Spretfail Yard, the Spretfail. Top-I maft, the Spret-fail-Top fail-Yard, the fore-Maft, the fore-Yard, the fore-Top-mast, the fore-Top-fail-Yard, the fore-Top gallant-Maft, the fore-Top gallant fail-Yard, Cotes, Wouldings, Gromits, and Staples for all Yards. The main Maft, the main-Yard, the main-Top. The main-Top-Maft, the main Topfail Yard. The Top gallant Mart. The main Top-gallant fail Yard. The Truck is a fquare piece of wood at the top, wherein you put the Flag-staff. The Mifen, the Mifen-Yard, the Mifen Top-mast, the Mifen-Top-fail Yard: The Crofs Jack. In great Ships they have two Milens, the latter is called the Bonaventure Millen. D A

A Jury Mafl, that is, when a Maft is born by the board, with Yards, Roofs, Trees, or what they can, fpliced or filhed together they make a Jury Maft, woulding or binding them with Ropes fast triced together with hand spikes, as they use to would or bind any Mast or Yard.

#### CHAP. V.

How all the Tackling and Rigging of a Ship is made. fast one to another, with their names, and the reafons of their use.

Rigging or Cordage. A Maît well rigged. A Yard well rigged. Over-rigged.

18

He fligging a Ship, is all the Ropes or Corbane belonging to the Mafts and Yards; and it is proper to fay, The Maft is well rigged, or the Yard is well rig: ned, that is, when all the Ropes are well fifed to a true proportion of her burthen. We fay alfo, when they are too many or too great, the is over rigged, and dothmuch wrong a Ship in her failing; for a finall weight aloft, is much more in that nature than a much greater below, and the more upright any Ship goeth, the better fhe failerh.

All Mails have Stays except one. A Coller. A Lannier. Dead mens

Crowcs-fcet,

cycs

All the Mafts, Top-Mafts, and Flag-flaves have Stays, excepting the Spret-fail Top-Malt; the main-Maft Stay is made fast by a Lannier to a Coller, which is a great Rope. that comes about the Head and Boult-spret, the other end to the head of the main-Maft. The main Top-Maft Stay is failned to the head of the Fore maft by a strop and a bran mans epe. The main Top-gallant Mafts Stay in like manner to the head of the Fore-Top-Maft. The fore Mafts and flays belonging to them in like manner are fastned to the Boultfpret, and Spretfail Top-Maft, and those Stays do help to ftay the Boultspret. The Misen stays do come to the main Mast, and the Milen Top-Mast Stays to the Shrowds with **Crows feet**: The use of those Stays are to keep the Mastri from falling aftwards, or 100 much forwards. Thole Lanniers are many finall Ropes reeved into the dead mens eyes of all

Shrowds.

#### The Sea mans Grammar. 23

hath two reeved at their ends thorough two pendants, and those are to square the yards, or traverse them as you please. The Boling is made fail to the leech of the Sail about the Boling. midft to make it fland the fharper or clofer by a winde, it is faltened by two, three, or four Ropes like a Crows foot to as many parts of the Sail which is called the Doling bridles, Boling-bridles. only the Miffen boling is fastened to the lower end of the Yard, this Rope belongs to all Sails except the Spret-fail, and Spret-fail Top-fail, which not having any place to sharp the Bo. hale it forward by, they cannot use those Sails by a wind : ling. Sharp the main Boling, is to hale it taut ; Bale up the Hale the Boling, is to pull it harder forward on: theth or eale the Boling. Boling is to let it be more flack. Boling.

Lee fanngs is a Rope reeved into the Creengles of the Lee fanngs. courfes, when we would hale in the bottom of the Sail, to lash on a bonnet, or take in the Sail; and free bing is but drawing Reeving. Leech lines a Rope through a block or oylet to run up and down Lethlines are fmall Ropes made fast to the Leech of the top fails, for they belong to no other; and are reeved into a block at the Yard close by the Top fail ties, to hale in the Leech of Leech of a the Sail when you take them in. The Urech of a Sail is the fail. outward fide of a skirt of a Sail, from the earing to the clew; and the Caring is that part of the Bunt-rope which at all Earlingse the four corners of the Sail is left open as it were a ring. The two upmost parts are put over the ends of the Yards-arms, and fo made fast to the Yards, and the lowermost are feased or bent to the Sheats, and tacks into the clew. The Lifts Bent. are two Ropes which belong to all Yards-arms, to top the Lifts. Yards; that is, to make them hang higher or lower at your pleasure. But the top fail Lifts do serve for Sheats to Topping the the Top gallant-Yards, the haling them is called the topping Lifts. the Lifts, as Top a ftarboard, or Top a port.

Tens are finall Ropes put through the Bolt-repes of the Legs main and fore-fail, near to a foot in length, fpliced each end into the other in the Leech of the Sail, having a little eye whereunto the Martnets are fastened by two hitches, and the end feafed into the ftanding parts of the apartnets, which Marmet

are

22	I be Sea-mans Grammar.
Furling lines.	furling-lines are finall lines made fast to the Top-fail, Top-gallant-fail, and the Miffen wards arms. The Miffen
A fmitting-line.	hath but one called the Smiting line, the other on each fide one, and by these we farthel or bind up the Sails. The
Erales.	Dialest are finall ropes reeved through blocks feafed on each fide the ties, and come down before the Sail, and at
	the very skirt are faltened to the Creengles, with them we furle or farthel our Sails a crofs, and they belong only
Creenglas.	to the two Courses and the Millen: to hale up the Brales, or brale up the Sail, is all one: <b>Cremules</b> are little ropes
8°	fpliced into the Boltropes of all Sails belonging to the Main and Fore-maft, to which the Bolings-bridles are made faft, and to hold by when we shake off a Bonnet.
Bolt-ropes:	<b>Boltropes</b> is that rope is fewed about every Sail, foft and gently twifted, for the better fewing and handling the
Bunt-lines.	Sails Built tines is but a fmall rope made fail to the midit of the Boltrope to a Creengle reeved through a fmall Block
Clew Garnet.	which is feafed to the Yard, to trice or draw up the bunt of the Sail, when you farthel or make it up. The <b>Clein-garnet</b> is a rope made fail to the Clew of the Sail, and from thence
•	runs in a block feased to the middle of the Yard, which in Furling doth hale up the Clew of the Sail close to the mid-
Clew-line.	dle of the Yard, and the <b>Clim-line</b> is the fame to the Top- fails, top-gallant, and Spret-fails, as the Clew-garnet is to the
A Clew.	Main and Fore-fails. The <b>Cleft</b> of a Sail is the lower cor- ner next the Sheet and Tackes, and firetcheth fomewhat
Goaring.	goaring or floping from the fquare of the Sail, and accor- ding to the Boaring she is faid to foread a great or a lit-
Tackes.	tle Clew. Clackes are great ropes which having a wall-
	knot at one end fealed into the Clew of the Sail and fo ree- ved first through the Chestres, and then cometh in at a hole in the Ships fides, this doth carry forward the clew of the Sail
Shcats.	to make it fland close by a wind. The stratg are bent to the Clews of all Sails, in the low-fails they hale aft the
	Clew of the Sails, but in Top-fails they ferve to hale them home, that is, to bring the Clew clole to the Yards-arm.
Braces.	The Bzaces belor.geo all yards but the Miffen, every yard
	Jati I

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

Shrowds, either to flacken them or fer them take alfo all the Stays have their blocks, and Dead mens ever have Larniers. Dead mens eyes are blocks, some finall, fome great, with many holes but no thivers; the Crows-feet reeved through them are a many of imal lines, fometimes 6, 8, or 10, but of fmall use more than for fallion to make the Ship flew full Blocks or of finall Ropes. Dioche or Dullies are thick pieces of Pullies. wood having thivers in them, which is a little wheel fixed Shivers. miche micht with a Coth or Pin, some are braß, but the A Cock. Runing ropes molt of wood, whereon all the running fropes do run, Some are little, some great, with 2, 4, or 5 thivers in them, and are called by the names of the Ropes whereto they ferve. There are also bouble Blocks, that where there is use of much firength will purchase with much ease, but not fo fast as the other, and when we hale any Tackle or Haleyard to which two blocks do belong, when they meet, we call that. Block and Block. block and block.

The Dischools are great Ropes which go up either fides All Mafis have of all Mafis. The Milen-main-Maft and fore-Maft Shrowds Shrowds, &c. Have at their lower ends Dead menseyes feafed into them, and are fet up taut by Lanniers to the chains; at the other end, over the heads of those Mails are Pendants, for Tackles and Swifters under them. The Top Maft-Shrowds in like manner are fastned with Lanniers and Dead menseyes to the Puttocksor Plats of iron belonging to them, alon over the head of the Maft as the other: And the Chains are Chains. ftrong Plates of iron fast bolted into the Shipsfide by the Chain-waile. When the Shrowds are too ftiff, we fay, gale them, when too flack, we fay, fer Caut the Shounds, but the Boultspret hath no Shrowds, and all those small Taught. Ropes that crois the Shrowds like fleps are called Hatings. Puttocks The Buttorks go from the Shrowds of the fore-Maft, main-Maft or Milen, to go off from the Shrowds into the Top, Cap, or Bowl, which is a round thing at the head of either Mast for men to stand in, for when the Shrowds come near the top of the Mast, they fall in so much, that without the Puttocks you could not get into the Top, and in a manner D 2 they

19

Double Blocks

To exfe. Radings.

20

Farrels.

Ribs.

Ereft-ropes.

The Tackles.

borte, Oc.

Guy.

Haw (ep.

Snap-block.

fialyards,

Car-harpings.

Standing.

ropes,

they are a kind of a Shrowd. A Pendant is a fhort Rope made failt at one end to the head of the Malt or the Yards. arm, having at the other end a block with a fhiver to reeve fome running rope in, as the Pendants of the back flays and Tackles hang a little down on the infide of the Shrowds: all Yards-arms have them but the Milen, into which the braces are reeved, and allo there are Pendants or Streamers hang from the Yard-arms, made of Taffaty, or coloured Flanel-cloth to beautifie the Ship only : Darrels are little round Balls called Trucks, and little pieces of wood called fibs, and ropes which do incircle the Malts, and fo made failt to the Yards, that the Yards may flip up and down eafily upon the Mafts, and with the help of the Wien rope doth keep the Yard close to the Mast. The Standing ropes are the Shrowds and stays, because they are not removed, except it be to be eafed or let tauter.

The Cathles or ropes run in three parts, having a Pendant with a block at the one end, and a block with a are of divers hook at the other, to heave any thing in or out of the Ship; they are of divers forts as the Bores-tackles made fait the one to the fore Shrowds, the other to the main, to hole the Boat in or out: Alfo the tackles that keep firm the Malts From firaying. The Gunners tackles for haling in or out the Ordnance : but the Winding tackle is the greatest, which is a great double block with three thivers to the end of a fmall Cable about the head of the Maft, and ferveth as a Pendant; to which is made faft a **Bup**, which is a rope brought to it from the fore Maft, to keep the weight upon it fleady, or from fwinging to and again : Into the block is reeved a Datefer, which is also reeved thorow another doublock, having a ftrop at the end of it, which put thorow the eye of the flings is locked into it with a fid, and to hoife the goods in or out by the help of the Snap block.

Cat harpings are small ropes run in little blocks from one fide of the other, neer the upper deck to keep the Shrowds the for the more fafety of the Maltsfrom rowling. The pards belong to all Mafts, for by them we hoife

· The Sea mans Grammar.

holfe the Yards to their height, and the Cits are the ropes The Ties. by which the Yards do hang, and do carry up the Yards when we strain the Halyards; the main-Yard and fore Yard Tics . are first reeved thorow the Rams head, then thorow the Hounds, with a turn in the eye of the flings which are made fast to the Yard; the misen-Yard and top Yard have but fingle Ties, that is, one doth but run in one part, but the Spret-fail Yard hath none, for it is made faft with a pair of flings to the boltipret. A Dozle is a rope made faft to the A Horfe. fore maft Shrowds, and the Spretfail sheats, to keep these lheats clear of the anchor-flookes.

2'L

To Sling is to make falt any Cask, Yard, Ordnance, or To Stirg. the like in a pair of Slings, and Slings are made of a tope Sings. fpliced at either end into it felf with one eye at either end, To long as to be fufficient to receive the Cask, the middle part of the rope also they fease together, and to maketh inother eve to hitch the hook of the tackle, another fort are made much longer for the hoifting of Ordnance, another is a chain of iron to fling or bind the Yards fast aloft to the crofs trees in a fight, left the Tie should be cut, and so the Mast Canl.ookes. must fall. The Canhooks are two hooks faltened to the end of a rope with a noofe, like that the Brewers use to fling or carry their barrels on, and shole ferve alfo to eake in A Parbunkel. or out Hogheads, or any other commodities. A Parbunkel is two ropes that have at each end a noofe or lump that being croffed, you may let any veffel that hath but one head upon them, bringing but the loopes over the upper end of the Cask, fix but the tackle to them, and then the Veffel will fland ftraight in the midft to heave out, or take in without fpilling.

, Buddingg are ropes nailed sound to the Yards arms close Puddings. to the end, a pretty dillance one form another, to fave the Robbins from galling upon the Yards, or to ferre the anchors fing to fave the clinch of the Cable from galling. And the fibbing are little lines reeved into the eylot holes of Rebbins. the Sail under the Head-ropes, to make fait the Sail to the Yard, for in flead of tying, Sea-men always fay, make Had lines. fait. Dead lines, are the ropes that make all the Sails fait vo the Yard. Lulig

32

#### The Sea mans Grammar.

the Fore caffle to the Poop, ftretched upon the Ledges from

the Maist tres to the House trees, which are only small

Timbers to bear up the Gatings from the half-Deck to

the Fore-caftle, hipported by Stantions that reft upon the

half-Deck; and this Netting or Grating, which is but

the like made of Wood, you may fet up or take down when

you pleafe, and is called the cloie Fights fore and aft. Now

the use of those Sails is thus, all Dead fails, which are

Waift-trees. Roufe-trees. Stantions. Gratings. Head Sails.

After-Sails.

Leech.

those belonging to the Fore malt and Bolt fpret, do keep the Ship from the Wind or to fall off: All After fails, that is, all the Sails belonging to the Main-malt and Mifen, heeps her to Wind ward, therefore few Ships will ftear upon Quarter winds with one Sail, but must have one after Sail, and one Head fail. The Sails are cut in proportion as the Masts and Yards are in breadth and length, but the Spret-fail is 3 parts the depth of the Fore fail, and the Mifen by the Leech twice to deep as the Maft is long from the Deck to the Hounds. The Leech of a Sail is the outward fide or skirt of the Sail from the Earing to the Clew. The Clew. the middle betwixt which we account the Leech. The Clew, is the lower corner of a Sail, to which you make faft your Shoets and Tacks, or that which comes goring out from the fourre of the Sail, for a Square fail hath no Clew, but Goring. the Main fail must be cut Gozing, because the Tacks will come clofer aboard, and fo caule the Sail to hold more wind; now when the Sail is large and hath a good Clew, we fay fhe fpreads a large Clew, or fpreads much Canvas. In making those Sails they use two forts of Seams down the Sails, which doth few the breadth of the Canvas together, A Monk-feam, the one we call a Month fram, which is flat, the other a A Round-team. Hound feam, which is fo called becaufe it is round.

The ship being thus provided, there wants yet her Ordnance, which should be in greatness according to her building in ftrength and burthen, but the greateft commonly lieth lowelt, which we call the lower Tier, if the be A Tier. furnished fore and aft. Likewife the fecond Tier, and the Third. third, which are the finalleft. The Fore caffle and the Second. half-

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

Caburne is a fmall line made of Spun yarn to make a hend Caburne. of two Cables, or to feafe the Tackels, or the like. Seafing Seafing. is to bind falt any ropes together, with fome fmall rope. yarne. Marline is any line, to a block, or any Tackle, Pendant, Garnet, or the like. There is also a rope by which the Boat doth ride by the Ships fide, which we call a Seafen. To farbe any rope with Plats or Sinnet, is but to Scafen. lay Sinner, Spun yarn, Ropz-yarn, or a piece of Canvas Satve or upon the rope, and then rowl it fall to keep the rope from Sirvia. galling about the Shrowds at the head of the Malts, the Cable in the Hawle, the flook of the Anchor, the Boat-rope or any thing. Spunparn is nothing but rope-yarn made fmall at Spunyarn. the ends, and to fpun one to another fo long as you will with a winch. Alfo Cashets are but final ropes of Sinnet made Cas ketta fast to the gromits or rings upon the Yards, the longest are in the midit of the Yards betwixt the Ties, and are called the breft Caskets, hanging on each fide the Yard in finall lengths only to bind up the Sail when it is furled.

Marling is a fmall line of untwifted hemp, very pliant Marline. and well tarred, to feafe the ends of Ropes from raveling out, or the fides of the blocks at their arles or if the Sail rent out of the Boltrope, they will make it fast with Marlin till they have leifure to mend it. The Marling fpifte, is but a Marling fpike. fmall piece of Iron to fplice ropestogether, or open the Boltrope when you few the fail. Spliting is fo to let one ropes Spliting end into another, they shall be as firm as if they were but one rope, and this is called a round Splice ; but the cut Splice A round fplice. is to let one into another with as much diftance as you will, A cut Splice, and yet be ftrong, and undo when you will. Now to make an end of this difcourfe with a Hnot, you are to know, Sea- A Knot. men use three, the first is called the Mall knot, which is a A Wall Knot. round knob, to made with the ftrouds or layes of a rope, it cannot flip; the Sheets, Tackes, and Stoppers use this knot. The Boling knot is also fo firmly made and fastened A Boling knot. by the bridles into the creengles of the Sails, they will break, or the Sail fplit before it will flip. The laft is the Sheepfhank Sheepfhankswhich is a knot they caft them upon a runner or Tackle when Knot. E

it is too long to take in the goods, and by this knot they can fhorten a Rope without cutting it, as much as they lift, and prefently undo it again, and yet never the worfe.

#### CHAP. VI.

What doth belong to the Boats and Skiffe, with the definition of all those Thirteen Ropes which are only properly called Ropes belonging to a Ship and the Boat, and their use.

F Boats there are divers forts, but those belonging to

Ships, are called either the Long Boat, or Ships

A Shallop. A Skiff.

A I ong-Boar.

Tarpawling. Bailes

Awning

Thoughts.

Thowles.

Boat, which should be able to weigh her Sheet Anchor, those will live in any reasonable Sea, especially the Long-Boat : Great Ships have also other fmall Boats called Shallong and Skiffg, which are with more eale and lefs trouble rowed to and again upon any fmall occasion. To a Boat belongs a Maft and Sail, a Stay-fheet and Halyard, Rudder, and Rudder-Irons, as to a Ship, alfo in any Difcovery they use a Carpatoling, which is a good piece of Canvas washed over with Tar, to cover the Builes or Hoopes over the Stern of their Boat, where they lodg in an Harbour, which is that you calla Tilt covered with Wadmall in your Wherries; or elfe an Aluming, which is but the Boats-fail, or fome piece of an old Sail brought over the Yard and Stay, and boomed out with the Boat-hook, fo foread over their heads, which is also much used, as well a shore as in a Ship, especially in hot Countries to keep men from the extremity of heat or wet, which is very oft infectious. Thoughts are the Seats whereon the Rowers fit; and Thomles fmall Pines put into little holes in the Gunwails or upon the Boats-fide, against which they bear the Oars when they row, they have also a David; and also in Long-Boats

The Sea mans Grammar. 21

warp the Ship by, which is laying out an Anchor, and wind her up to it by a Capftern. fouling is but pulling the flack. Roufing. nefs of any Cables with mens hands into the Ship. The Shank-panter is a fhort chain faftened under the Fore. Shank-panter. mails shrowds with a bolt to the Ships fides, and at the other end a rope to make fast the Anchor to the Bowe. To Stop Stop. is when you come to an Anchor, and veeres out your Cable, but by degrees till the Ship ride well, then they fay ftop the Ship. To thole Cables and Anchors belong thort pieces of\_ wood called Bong, or clofe hooped Barrels like Tankards Boves. as is faid, but much fhorter, to fhew you the Anchor and help to weigh it, there is another fort of Cans called Can Boys Can-Loves. much greater, moored upon fhoules to give Mariners warning of the dangers.

The Main fail and the fore fail is called the fore courfe, and the main courfe, or a pair of Courfes. Bonits and Dra. Sailes. blerg are commonly one third part a piece to the Sail they Fore Sail. belong unto in depth, but their proportion is uncertain; for Main-courfe. fome will make the main-Sail fo deep, that with a shallow Fore course. Bonit they will cloath all the Maft without a Dabler, but Bonnets. Drablers. without Bonnets we call them but Courfes; we fay, lafh on the Bonet to the Courfe, because it is made fast with Latchets into the Eylot-holes of the Sail, as the Drabler is to it, and ufed as the wind permits. There is also your Main top fail, Main top fail. and fore-top-fail, with their Cop gallant fails, and in Fore-top-fail. a fair Gale your Studding-fails, which are Bolts of Can- Top-gallintvafs, or any cloth that will hold wind, we extend alongit Studding fails. the fide of the Main fail, and Booms it out with a Boom or long Pole, which we use also fometimes to the Clow of the Main-fail, Fore-fail, and Spret fail, when you go before the Milen. Wind or Quartering, elfe not. Your Apilen, and Apilen: Milen-top-fail. top fail, your Spret and Spret top fail, as the reft, take Spret fail top. all their names of their Yards. A Daift-fail is only uled Sail. under water, veered out right a head by Sheets, to keep the Lrift-lail. Ships-head right upon the Sea in a ftorm, or when a Ship drives too fait in a current. A metting fail is only a Sail Netting fail. laid over the Retting, which is finall Ropes from the top of Neurings. the

30

#### The Sea-mans Grammar.

•	but no flock; for a Boat to ride by, or to throw into a Ship
	in a tight, to pull down the gratings or hold faft,
A Cable, the	The Cables allo carry a proportion to the Anchors, but
tirlt, fecond,	it it be not three ftroud, it is accounted but a Hawfer, yet a
and third.	great Ships Hawfer may be a Cable to the Sheet-anchor for
	a fmall Ship : and there is the first, second, and third Cable,
Sheet-Anchor-	besides the Shret-Authoz Cable. If the Cable be well
Cable.	made, we fay it is well laid. To therkell or farve the Cable,
Keckell.	as is faid, is but to bind fome old clouts to keep it from gal-
Splice.	ling in the Hawle or Ring. Splitte a Cable, is to falten
.,	two ends together, that it may be double in length, to make
A fhot of	the Ship ride with more eafe, and is called a flot of Cable.
Cab'e.	Quoile a Cable, is to lay it up in a round Ring, or fake one
Quoile.	above another. Day more Cable, is when you carry an
A Fake. Pay more Ca-	Anchor out in the Boat to turn over. Dan theap, is when
ble.	you over fet it, or turns it over board faiter. Decre moze
Pay cheape.	Cable, is when you ride at Anchor. And end foz end is
Veere mora	when the Cable runneth clear out of the Hawle, or any rope
Cable. End for end.	out of his thiver. A Bight is to hold by any part of a coile,
A Eight,	that is, the upmost fake. A Bitter is but the turn of a Cable
	about the Bits, and veere it out by little and little. And the
A Eitter.	Bitters end is that part of the Cable doth stay within
Gert.	board. Bert, is when the Cable is to taut that upon the
	turning of a tide, a Ship cannot go over it.
To bend	To bend the Cable to the Anchor, is to make it fast to
Unbend.	the Ring; unbend the Cable, is but to take it away, which
	we usually do when we are at Sea, and to tie two ropes or
Eending.	Cables together is called bending. Ditch, is to catch hold
Huch.	of any thing with a rope to hold it fail, or with a hook, as
	hitch the Fish-hook to the Anchors flook, or the Tackles
Fenders.	into the Garnets of the Slings. Fenders are pieces of old
Jankes.	Faufers called Junkes hung over the Ship fides to keep
	them from bruiling. In Boats they use Poles or Boat-
Brefl-fafl.	hooks to fend off the Boat from bruifing. A Beeft fast is a
•	rcpe which is faltened to fome part of the Ship forward on,
Storn-faft.	to hold her head to a Wharff or any thing, and a Stern falt
	is the fame in the Stern. The use for the Hawfer is to
	waip

The Sea-mans Grammar. 27

boats a windlefs to weigh the Anchor by, which is with more ease than the Ship can. The two arching-timbers :gainst the boat head are called Carlings. Man the boat is to put a Gang of men, which is a company into her, they are A Gane. commonly called the Coxfwains Gang, who hath the charge of her. Fre the Boat is to bail or calt out the water. Trim Free er Bail. the Boat is to keep her fraight. Wind the Boat is to bring Trim Boar. her head the other way. Dold mater is to ftay her. for. Wind Boat. bear is to hold still any Oar you are commanded, either Fortear. Hold water. on the broad, or whole fide, A fresh Spell is to re ieve the A Spell. Rowers with another Gang-Give the Boat more way for a dram of the Bottel, who fays Amends, one and all, Dea, Ver, ver, ver. bea, bea, bea, bea, that is, they pull all frongly together.

The Entering rope is tyed by the Ships fide, to hold by The Enteringas you go up the entering Ladder, cleats, or wailes. rope.

The Bucket rope that is tied to the Bucket by which Bucket rope. you hale and draw water up by the Ships fide.

The Bolt rones are those wherein the Sails are lowed. The Post-ropes hale up the Ports of the Ordnance.

The grare rope is a piece of a Hawler made fall to the leare-rope. Main-yard, another to the Fore-yard close to the Ties, "eeved through a Block which is feafed clofe to the top, and fo comes down by the Malt, and is reeved through another block at the bottom of the Maft close by the Deck ; great Ships have on each fide the Ties one, but finall Ships none : the use is to help to hoise up the Yard to fuccour the Ties, which though they break yet they would hold up the Maft.

The Dreventer rope is a little one feafed crofs over the Preventer-Ties, that if one part of them should break, yet the other rope. fhould not run through the Rams head to indanget the Yard.

The Copropes are those wherewith we fet or firike the Top rope. main or fore top mafts, it is reeved through a great block feafed under the Cap, reeved through the heel of the Top. malt thwart Ships, and then made falt to a ring with a clinch on the other fide the Cap, the other part comes down

. E 2

Bolt-ropes. Port-ropes-

by

28	The Sea-mans Grammar?	The Sea-mans Grammar: 29 -
28 Recl-ropes. Rudder-rope. Cat-rope. Boy-rope. Boat-rope. Cheft-rope.	by the Ties, reeved into the Knights, and fo brought to, the Capitain when they fet the Top mails. The <b>Mail rope</b> , you have read in the building, is of hair in the Keel to feower the Limber-holes.	The Sea-mans Grammar:       29         C H A P. VII.       29         The Names of all forts of Anchors, Cables, and Sails ;       10         and how they bear their proportions, with their ufe :       10         Alfo how the Ordnance fhould be placed, and the       10         Goods flowed in a Ship.       10         THE proper terms belonging to Intelious are many:       10         the leaft are called incourse, to ute in calm wear a fieles.
Switting.	towed at the Ships flern, to keep her from flearing, that is, from fwinging to and again; for in a fliff gale fle will make fuch yaws, and have fuch girds, it would indanger her to be torn in pieces, but that they use to <b>fluift</b> her, that is, to incircle the Gunwaile with a good rope, and to that mal c fait the <b>Cheft rope</b> .	ther in a flow ftream, or to kedge up and down a narrow River, which is when they fear the wind or tide may drive them on flore; they row by her with an Anchor in a Boat, and in the midft of the ftream, or where they find most fit if the Ship come too near the flore, and fo by a Hawfer wind her head about, then weigh it again till the like occasion, and this is litedging. There is allo a Stream-An-
		<b>Xinthoz</b> not much bigger, to ftem an eafle ftream or tide. The Then there is the first, fecond, and third Anthoz, yet all fue first, fuch as a Ship in fair weather may ride by, and are called thurst each Bow-Anchors. The greateft is the Shirt Anthoz, and never Shert-Antho used but in great accessive. They are commonly made ac- cording to the Burthen of the Ship by proportion, for that the Sheet-Anchor of a fmall Ship will not ferve for a Kedger An Anthora
	≻ CHAP.	to a great Ship. Alfo it beareth a proportion in it feif, as the think, one flook, which is that doth flick in the ground, is hat those one flook, which is that doth flick in the ground, is hat the bear of the third part of the Shank is length; at the bear of the fhank there is a hole called an Gpc, and in it a fing, where in is the flut to which there is fall fixed a Stock of wood croffing the flucks, and the length is taken from the length of the Shank. Thefe differ not in flape but in weight, from two hundred, to three or four thouland weight. Coapting or G2aplings, are the leaft of all, and have four 10005

#### How to handle a Ship in a Storm.

T overcafts, we shall have wind, foul weather, settle-your Top fails, take in the Spret-sail, in with your Top fails, lower the Fore-fail, tallow under the Parrels, brade up close all them Sails, lash fure the Ordnance, strike your Top-mafts to the Cap, make it fure with your Sheeps feet. Tay. A florm, let us lie at @rie with our main-Courfe, that is, to · hale the Tack aboard, the Sheet close aft, the Boling fet up, and the Helm tied close aboard. When that will not ferve, then try the Mifen, if that folit, or the florm grow fo great that the cannot bear it, then hull, which is to bear no fail, but to ftrike a hull is when they would lie obscurely in the Sea, or flay for fome Confort, lash fure the Helm a lee, Under the Sea. and to a good Ship will lie at eafe under the Sea, as we Weather coil. term it. If the will meather coil, and lay her head the other way without loofing a fail, that must be done by bearing up the Helm, and then she will drive nothing to far to Leeward. They call it hulling also in a calm fwelling Sea, which is commonly before a ftorm, when they ftrike their Sails left the thould beat them in pieces against the Maft by Romling. We fay a Ship doth Labour-much when the doth rowl much any way; but if the will neither Trie nor Hull, then fpoon, that is, put her right before the wind, this way although the will row more than the other, yet if the be weak, it will not ftrain her any thing to much in the Trough Trough. of the Sea, which is the diffance betwixt two Waves or Billows. If none of this will do well, then the is in danger to founder, if not fink. Foundering is, the will neither veer Founder. nor fteer, the Sea will fo over-rake her, except you free out the water, the will lie like a Log, and to confequently fink. To fpend a Malt or Bard is when they are broke by foul weather, and to fpring a spaff is when it is cracked Spring a Maft. in any place.

In this extremity he that doth cun the Ship, cannot have too much judgment, nor experience to try her bifft, or how fhe

Zhe Sea-mans Grammar. 33

half Deck being also furnished, we account half a Halfa Tier. Tier.

Stamage or to Stow, is to put the goods in How! in Stowage. order. The most ponderous next the Ballast, which is To Stow. Ballast. next the Keelfon to keep her stiffe in the Sea. 2Ballass is either Gravel, Stones, or Lead, but that which is drieft, heavieft, and lies clofelt is beft. To find a leak, they Erench Treach the the Ballaft, that is, to divide it. The Ballaft will fom- Ballaft. Shoot. times Shoot, that is, run from one fide to another, and fo will Corn and Salt, if you make not Pouches or Bulk-heads, which when the Ship doth heeld is very dangerous to overfet or turn the Keel upwards. For Cask that is fo ftow-Cantinged, Tier above Tier with Ballaft, and Canting-Coines, Coins. which are little (hort peices of wood or Billets cut with a sharp ridge or edge to lie betwixt the Cask ; and Standing- Standing-Coines are Billets or Pipe flaves, to make them they can- Coins. not give way nor flir. The Ship will bear much, that is, Tobear. carry much Ordnance or goods, or bear much Sail; and when you let any thing down into the Howl, lowering it Amin. by degrees, they fay, 24 main; and being down, Strike. Strike.



40

Hull.

Rowling. Labour.

Spoon.

To fpend a

Maft.

#### CHAP. VIII.

#### The Charge and Duty of the Captain of a Ship, and every Office and Officer in a Man of War.

HE Captains Charge is to command all, and tell The Captains the Master to what Port he will go, or to what Height. Charge. In a Fight, he is to give Direction for the managing thereof, and the Master is to see the cunning of the Ship, and, Trimming of the Sails.

The Mafter and his Mates are to direct the courfe, com-The Mafter and his Mates. mand all the Sailers, for Steering, Trimming, and Sailing the Ship; his Mates are only hid Seconds, allowed fomtimes for the two Mid-Ships Men, that ought to take charge of the first prize.

The Pilot.

on and his

Mate.

34

The Pilot when they make Land doth take the charge of the Ship till he bring her to Harbour.

The Chirurgion is to be exempted from all duty, but The Chirurgito attend the Sick, and cure the wounded : and good care would be had he have a Certificate from Barber-Chirurgions Hall of his fufficiency, and also that his Cheft be well furnished both for Physick and Chirurgery, and fo near as may be, proper for that clime you go for, which neglect hath been the loss of many a mans Life.

TheCap-Merchant or Purfer.

ter and his

Mate.

The Cap Derthant or Purfer hath the charge of all the Carragafoun or Mcrchandize, and doth keep an account of all that is received, or delivered, but a Man of War hath only a Purfer.

The Master Gunner hath the Charge of the Ordnance. The Gunner with his Mate, and Shot, Powder, Match, Ladles, Sprunges, Worms, Cartrages, Arms and Fire-Works; and the reft of the Bunners, and quarter cr Quarter Gunners to receive their Charge from him ac-Gunners. cording to directions, and to give an account of their flores.

The Carpenter and his Mate, is to have the Nails, Clin-The Carpenches, Roove and Clinch-nailes, Pikes, Splates, Rudder Irons, Pump-

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

39

what they will till midnight; and then his Mare with his Larboard men, with a Plalm and a Prayer, relieves them till four in the Morning, and fo from eight to twelve each other, except lome flaw of wind come, lome florin, or guilt, or fome accident that requires the help of all hands which commonly after fuch good Cheer in most Voyages doth happen.

- For now the mind beers, that is, it doth thift from point The wiad to point, get your Starboard tackes aboard, and tally or veers. Tally. hale off your Lee fheets. The Ship will not wayer, tettle your main Top-fail, veere a fadome of your fleet. The wind comes fair again and a freth gale, hale up the Slatch of the Lee-boling. By Starch is meant the middle part of any Rope hangs over board. Veere more theet, or a flotin Flown. theer, that is, when they are not haled home to the Block. But when we fay, let fip the fheets, then they let go amain. Fly. which commonly is in fome guft, left they fpend their Topfails, or if her quick fide lie in the water, over fet the Ship. A Flown-fheet is when the goes before the wind, or betwixt a nair of ficets, or all Sails drawing. But the wind A pair of courfhrinks, that is, when you must take in the Spret-fail, and fes. get the Tacks aboard, hale clofe the main Boling, that is, when your Tacks are clofe aboard. If you would fail against the wind, or keep your own, that is, not to fall to Lee-ward, or go back again, by haling off close your Bolings, you fet your Sails fo fharp as you can to lie cloic by a wind, thwarting it a League or two, or more or lefs, as you fee caufe, first on the one board, then on the other; this we call boarding or beating it up upon a Tack in the winds eye, or bolting to and again ; but the longer your Boarda are, the more you work or gather into the wind. If a fudden flaw of wind fhould furprize you, when you would lower a Yard to faft as you can, they call Amain; that a crofs fail cannot come nearer the wind than fix points, Lut a Carvel, whole Sails flands like a pair of Tailors firzers, will go much nearer.

H w

38

Tally.

Hawfe of the fhip right over the Anchor: what is the Anchor away? Yea, yea: Let fall your Fore-fail. **Callp.** that is, hale off the Sheats; who is at the Helm there? coil your Cables in fmall fakes, hale the Cat, a Bitter, belay, loofe faft your Anchor with your Shank-painter, flow the Boat, fet the land, how it bears by the Compafs, that we may the better know thereby to keep our account, and direct our courfe, let fall your Main fail, every man fay his private Prayer for a boon V oyage, out with your fpret-fail, on with your Bonnits and Drablers, fleer fleady and keep your courfe, fo, you go well.

#### How they divide the Company at Sea, and fet, and rule the Watch.

W Hen this is done, the Captain or Mafter commands the Boatswain to call up the Company; the Master being chief of the Starboord watch, doth call one, and his right hand Mate on the Lapoard toth call another, and fo forward sill they be divided into two parts, then each man is to chuse his Mate, Confort, or Comrade, and then divide them into iquadrons according to your number and burthen of your Ship, as you fee occasion; these are to take their turns at the Helm, trim fails, pump, and do all duties each half, or each fquadron for eight Glaffes, or four hours, which is a Watch, but care would be had, that there be nor two Comrades upon one Watch, becaufe they may have the more room in their Cabbins to reft. And as the Captain and Master's Mates, Gunners, Carpenters, Quartermasters, Trumpeters, Oc. are to be abaft the Maff, fo the Boatfwain, and all the Yonkers or common Sailers under his command is to be before the Maft. The next is, to mels them four to a Mefs, and then give every Mefs a quarter Can of Beer, and a Bisket of Bread to flay their ftomacks till the Kettle be boiled, that Way may fift go to Prayer, then to fupper, and at fix a Clock they a Pfalm, fay a Prayer, and the Mafter with his fide begins the Watch, then all the reft may do what

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

Pump nails, Skupper nails, and Leather, Sawes, files, Hatchets, and fuch like, and ever ready for calking, Breaming, Stopping leaks, Fishing, or fplicing the Masts or Yards as occasion requireth, and to give account of his Store.

The **Doatlinain** is to have the Charge of all the Cordage, The Boar-Tackling, Sails, Fids and Marling-fpikes, Needles, Twine, Iwain and his Sail-cloth, and Rigging the Ship, his Mate the Command Mate. of the Long Boat, for the fetting forth of Anchors, weighing or fetching home an Anshor, Warping, Towing, or Moring, and to give an account of his Store.

The **Trumpeter** is always to attend the Captains Com- The Trumpemand, and to found either at his going a Shore, or coming aboard, at the entertainment of Strangers, allo when you hale a Ship, when you charge, board, or enter; and the Poop is his place to fland or fit upon, if there be a noife, they are to attend him, if there be not, every one he doth teach to bear a part, the Captain is to incourage him, by increasing his Shares, or pay, and give the Mafter Trumpeter a reward.

The **Mparthal** is to punish Offenders, and to fee Juffice The Marshal. executed according to Directions; As Ducking at the Tards Arm, baling under the Keel, bound to the Capfern, or main-Mass with a Basket of Shot about his Neck, jetting in the Bilbowes, and to pay the Cobry or the Morjoune; but the Boys the Boatswain is to fee every Munday at the Cheft, to fay their compass, and receive their punishment for all their Weeks offences, which done, they are to have a quarter Can of Beer, and a Bisket of Bread, but if the Boatswain Eat or Drink before he catch them, they are free.

The **Cozpozal** is to fee the Setting and Releiving the Watch, The Corporal. and fee all the Souldiers and Sailers keep their arms clean, Neat, and Yare, and teach them their ufe.

The Steward is to deliver out the Victuals according to The Steward. the Captains directions, and Mefs them four, five, or fix, and his Mateas there is occasion.

The Quarter-Massiers have the Charge of the Howle, The Quarterfor Stowing, Romaging and Trimming the Ship in the hold, Master. F 2 and

### 36

## The Sea-mans Grammar.

and of their Squadrons for the Watch, and for Fifting to have a Sayne, a Fifgig , a Harpin-yran, and Fifbbooks, for Porgos, Bonetos, Dolphins, or Dorados, and Rayling lines for Mackrels.

- The Cooper The Cooper is to look to the Cask, Hoops and Twigs, to and his Mase. Stave or repair the Buckets, Baricos, Cans, Steep-tubs, Runlets, Hogheads, Pipes, Buts, Oc. For Wine, Bear, Sider, Beverage, Fresh water, or any Liquor. The Coxfwain
- The Corlmain is to have a choice Gang to attend the. and his Mate. Skiffe, to go to and again as occasion commandeth.
- The Cook is to drefs and deliver out the Victual, he The Cook and bis Mate. hath his Store of Quarter Cans, Small Cans, Platters, Spoons, Lantbornes, &c. And is to give his Account of the remainder.
- The Swabber. The Swabber is to wash and keep clean the Ship and, Maps. 🍜
- The Lyar: The Liar is to hold his place but for a week, and he that. is first taken with a lie, every Monday is so proclaimed at the main-Maft by a general cry, a Liar, a Liar, a Liar, he is under the Swabber, and only to keep clean the Beakhead, and Chains.
- The Sailers. The Sailers are the ancient men for hoifing the Sails, getting the tacks aboard, haling the Bowling, and Steering the Ship.
- The younkers are the young men called fore Maft men, The Younkers to take in the top fails, or Top and Yard, for furling the, Sails, or Slinging the Yards, Boufing or Trifing, and take their turns at Helm.

The Ateutenant is to affociate the Captain, and in his The Lieutemant his plage absence to execute his place, he is to fee the Marshal and" Corporal do their duries, and affift them in inftructing the. Souldiers, and in a fight the fore-caftle is his place to make good, as the Captain doth the Half-deck, and the Quarter-Masters, or Masters Mate, the Mid-ships, and in a States .. man of War, he is allowed as necessary as a Lieutenant on Shore.

CHAP.

### The Sea mans Grammar.

#### 37

#### CHAP. IX.

#### Reoper Seaterms for dividing the Company at Sea, and fleering, failing, or moving a Ship in fair weather; or in a storm.

TT is to be supposed by this the Ship is victualied and manned, the Voyage determined, the fierroftibs in Sucp-Tubs: the Chains to shift their Beef, Pork, or Fish in falt water, till the falt be out though not the faltness, and all things elfe ready to fet fail; but before we go any further, for the better understanding the reft, a few words for fitering and Stearing. cunning the Ship would not be amifs. Then know, Star: Cunning. Starboard. board is the right hand, Larboard the left; Starboard the Larboard. Helm, is to put the Helm a Starboard, then the Ship will go to the Larboard. Right pour Delm, that is, to keep it in the Mid fhipt. mid Ships, or right up. Post, that is, to put the Helm to Port. Larboard, and the Ship will go to the Starboard, for the Ship will ever go contrary to the Helm. Now by a quarter whid, they will fay alouf, or heep pour Hof, keep her to Aloof. it, have a care of your Lee-latche Touch the wind, and Keep your war no moze, is no more but to bid him at the Helm to loof. War no more, keep her fo near the wind as may be; no near, safe the No near. Helm, or bear up, is to let her fall to Lee ward. Strady. Eac. that is, to keep her right upon that point you fteer by; he Steady. Y arc. pare at the Helm, or a freih man to the Helm. But he that keeps the Ship most from yawing, doth commonly use the least motion with the Helm, and those steer the best.

The Master and Company being aboard, he commands them to get the Sails to the Yards, and about your gear, or Gear. work on all hands, ftretch forward your main Hallyards, hoife your Sails half Maft high. Dredy, or make ready to Predy. a fet fail, crofs your Yards, bring your Cable to the Capitern; Boatswain fetch an Anchor aboard, break ground or weigh Anchor. Heave a head, men into the Tops, men upon the Yards; come, is the Anchor, a pine; that is, to heave the A like. Hawle

F. Idie Lide.

48

the Channel; for although the Tide of Flood run aloft, yet the Tide of Ebb runs close by the ground. An Cobie-Tide is where the water doth run back contrary to the Tide, that is, when some Headland or great Point in a River hinderesh the free passage of the fream, that caufeth the water on the other fide the Point to turn round by the shore as in a Cirle, till it fall into the Tide again.

As touching the reafons of Ebbs and Floods, and to know how far it is to the bottom of the deepest place of the Sea, I will not take upon me to discourse of; as knowing the fame to be the fecrets of God unrevealed to man: only I will fet down a Philosophical speculation of divers mens opinions touching the depth of the Sea; which I hope will not be thought much impertinent to the fubject of this Book by the Indicious Reader.

The heigh of Mountains perpendicular.

The heigh of

the Hills com-

Fabianus in Pliny, and Cleomides conceived the depth of the Sea to be fifteen Furlongs, that is, a Mile and 3 parts. Plutarch compared it equal to the highest Mountains; Scaliger and others conceited the Hills far furpailed the deepnefs of the Sea, and that in few places it is more than a hundred paces in depth, it may be he meant in fome narrow Seas, but in the main Ocean experience hath taught us it is much more than twice fo much, for I have founded 300 fathom, yet found no ground. Eratoftbenes in Theon that great Mathematician writeth the higheft Mountain perpendicular is but ten Furlongs, that is, one Mile and a quarter. Alfo Dicearcus affirmeth this to be the height of the Hill Pelius in Theffalia, but Xenagoras in Plutarch observed the · height of Olympius in the fame region to be twenty paces more, which is 1270. paces, but furely all those mean only those Mountains in or about Greece, where they/lived and were belt acquainted; but how thefe may compare with the Alpes, in Afia, Atlas in Africa, Caucalus in India, the

pared with the, Andes in Peru, and divers others hath not yet been exa-Superficies of mined. the Earth and But whatfoever the Hills may be above the Superficies of depth of the 3 the Earth, many hold opinion the Sea is much deeper, who Se4. lupThe Sea-mans Grammar.

the Cans, which are two terms also used in the Trials of the running or fetting of currants. A poke is when the Sea A Yoke is to rough as that men cannot govern the Helm with their hands, and then they fease a block to the Helm on each fide the end, and reeving two fals thorow them like Gunners Tackles, brings them to the Ship fide, and fo fome being at the one fide of the Tackle, fome at the other, they fteer her with much more eafe then they can with a fingle rope with a double turn about the Helm.

When the Storm is palt, though the wind may alter three or four points of the Compass, or more, yet the Sea for a good time will go the fame ways then if your courle be right against it, you shall meet it right a head, so we call it a Bead Sea. Sometimes when there is but little wind , A herd Sea. there will come a contrary Sea, and prefently the wind after it, whereby we may Judg that from whence it came was much wind, for commonly before any great Storm the Sea will come that way. Now if the Ship may run on thore in ofe or mud the may efcape, or Billage on a rock, or Anchors flook, repair her leak, but if the fplit or fink, the isa wrack. But feeing the Storm decreafeth, let us try if she will endure the Bullock of a Sail, which fomtimes is a peice of the Milen Sail or fome other little Sail, part opened to keep her head to the Sea, but if yet the would weather coile, we will loofe a Hullock of her fore-Sail, and put the Helm a weather, and it will bring her head where her ftern is; courage my hearts.

It clears up, fet your fore Sail; Now it is fair weather Largeout with all your Sails, go Larg or Lask, that is, when Liskes. we have a fresh gale, or fair wind, and all Sails drawing. But for more hafte unparrel the Milen-Yard and lanch it, and the Sail over her Lee-quarter, and fit Gives at the further end to keep the Yard fleady, and with a Boom, Goolewing, Boom it out; this we call a Goole ming. Who is at Helm there? Sirra, you must be amongst the Points; Well Master the Channel is broad enough ; yet you cannot fleer betwixt a pair of fheats; Those are words of mockery betwixt the Gunner and the Stearsman. But to proceed. G Get

Hullock.

Get your Larboard Tackes aboard, hale off your Starboard fheats, keep your courfe upon the Point you are directed. Port, he will lay her by the Lee; the flays, or backstays, that is, when all the Sails flutter in the wind, and are not kept full, that is full of wind, they fall upon the Maft and Shrowds, fo that the Ship goes a drift upon her broad fide, fill the Sails, keep full, full and by. Make ready to Tack about, is for every man to fland to handle the Sails and ropes they must hale. Tack about is to bear up the Helm and that brings her to flay, all her Sails lying flat against the Shrowds, then as the turns we fay the is payed, then let rife your Lee tacks, and hale off your Sheats, and trim all your Sails as they were before, which is caft off that Boling which was the weather-Boling, and hale up taut the other. So all your Sheats, Braces, and Tacks are trimmed by a wind as before. To belay, is to make fast the ropes in their proper places. found in is when the wind larges, let rife the main tack and fore-tack, and hale aft the fore Sheat to the Cats head, and the main Sheat to the cubbridge head, this is founding in, or founding after the Sail; the Sheets being there they hale them down to keep them firm from flying up with a Palarado, which is any . rope wherewith we hale down the Sheats, blocks of the main or, fore Sail, when they are haled aft the clew of the main Sail to the Cubbridge head of the main Maft, and the clew of the fore-Sail to the Cat-head; Do this when the-Ships goes large.

Observe the height; that is, at twelve a clock to take the height of the Sun, or in the night the North Star, or in the forenoon and afternoon, if you mis these by finding the Azimuth and Almicanter. Dead mater is the Cosp mater follows the stern of the Ship, not passing away to quickly as that flides by her fides. The Monke of a Ship is the sea, by this we judge what way the doth make, for it the wake be, right a flern, we know the makes good her way forwards; but if to Lee-ward a point or two, we then think The Sea-mans Grammar. 47

much lefs than a trumpeft, that will blow down Houfes, and A Tempeft. Trees up by the roots. A alfoutinforme is a confrant wind in the A Mountoune.» Eaft Indies, that bloweth always three Months together one way, and the next three Months the contrary way. A Lye A Hericano. ritano is fo violent in the Welt-Indies, it will continue three, four, or five weeks, but they have it not palt once in five, fix, or feven years; but then it is with fuch extremity, that the Sea flies like rain, and the waves fo high, they over-flow the low Grounds by the Sea, infomuch, that Ships have been driven over tops of high Trees there growing, many Leagues into the Land, and there left, as was Captain' Francis Nellon ar Englishman, and an excellent Seaman for one.

We fay a calm Sea, or Dittalmed, when is fo fmooth the Becalmed. Ship moves very little, and the men leap over board to fwim. A Hough Sea is when the waves grow high. In our A'Rough Sea grown Sea when the Surges and Dillows go higheft. An overgrown Sea. The fut of the Sea, where it doth daff againft any thing. And Surges. the Hoaring of the Sea is most commonly observed a shore. The Rut of the a little before a ftorm or after a ftorm.

The roaring **Flood** is when the water beginneth to rife; which is point of the Sea. **Flood** as we call it, then Quarter-flood, Half-flood, Full-Sea, Floods and Still water, or Higb water. So when it **Chug**, Quarter ebb, Ebbs. Half ebb, three Quarter ebb, Low-water, or Dead Low water, every one doth know; and also that as at a Spring tide the Sea or water is at the bigbeft, fo at a Neapertide it is at the loweft. This word **Cibe**, is common both to Flood and Ebb; for you fay as well Tide of Ebb; as Tide of Flood, or a A Tide of windward Tide, when the Tide run: againft the Stream, as a E<sup>th</sup> Leeward Tide, that is, when the wind and the <u>Tide goetif</u> the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the Tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the tide of Ebb or Flood, and ftop the contrary by An. A Leeward: the tide of Ebb or Flood has the tide and half-Tide, that is, Tide and halfit will be half-Flood by the flore; before it begin to flow in Tide.

Round in:

42

Palarado.

Rounding aft.

Coferre,

Dead-water.

The Water

tha

#### CHAP X.

Proper terms for the Winds, Ebbs , Floods, and Eddiesy with their definitions, and an estimate of the Depth of the Sea, by the Height of the Hils and the largenefs of the Earth.

A Calm. A Breeze.

Turnado,

A toom.

gale.

🛦 Guft.

A Spout.

2 Storm.

4

46

1

Then there is not a breath of wind ftirring, it is a Calm or a ftark Calm. A Breeze is a wind blows out of the Sea, and commonly in fair weather beginning about nine in the morning, and lafteth till neer night; fo likewife all the night it is from the fhore, which is called a Eurnabo, or a Sea turn, but this is but upon fuch coafts where it bloweth thus most certainly, except it be a ftorm, or very foul weather, as in Barbary, Agypt, and the most of the Levant. We have fuch Breezes in most hot countrys in Summer, but they are very uncertain. 2 frein Bale is that doth pre-A fresh Gale. fently blow after a calm, when the wind beginneth to quicken or blow. A fair Loun Gale is the beft to Sail in because the Sea goeth not high, and we bear out all our Sails. A stiffe gale is fo much wind as our Top-fails can endure to bear. An coop-wind is checked by the Sail, a Mountain, turning, Eddy-wind. or any fuch thing that makes it return back again. It over it over blows. blotts when we can bear no Top-fails. A flaw of wind is A Built which is very violent upon a fudden, but quickly endeth. A Spott in the West Indies commonly falleth in those Gults, which is, as it were, a small river falling entirely from the clouds, like out of our water Spouts, which make the Sea where it falleth rebound in flathes, exceeding A whirl-wind high. Mhirle-winds running round, and bloweth divers wayes at once. I Storm is known to every one not to be , much

The Sea-mans Grammar.

think to the Lee-ward of her courfe, but the is a nimble Ship, that in turning or tacking about will not fall to the Lee ward of her wake when the hath weathered it. Diffmhogue is Difimbogue. to pass some narrow straight or currant into the main Ocean A drift. out of some great Gulf or Bay. A Drift is any thing floating in the Sea that is of wood. Rock weed dothgrow Rockweed. by the shore, and is a sign of Land, yet it is oft found far in the Sea. Lay the Ship by the Lee to trie the Diplea-line. tea line, which is a small line, fome hundred and fifty fathome long, with a long plummet at the end, made hollow, wherein is put tallow, that will bring up any gravel; which is first marked at twenty fathome, and after increased by tens to the end; and those diftinguished by so many fmalt knots upon each little ftring that is fixed at the mark thorow the Strouds or midit of the line, flewing it is for many times ten fathome deep, where the Plummet doth Plummet. reft from drawing the line out of your hand; this is only ufed in deep waters when we think we approach the shore', for in the Main Sea at 200. fathomes we find no bottom. Bring the Ship to rights, that is, again under Sail as the was; fome use a **Log-line**, and a minute glass to know what way Log-line. The makes, but that is fo uncertain, it is not worth the labour to try it.

One to the Top to look out for Land, the man cries out Land to: Land to; which is just to far as a Kenning, or a man may Kenning difcover, defcry, or fee the Land. And to Lap a Land isto To lay a land. Sail from it, just to far as you can fee it. A good Land fall Good land. is when we fall just with our reckoning, if otherwise a Bad fall. Hand fall; but however how it bears, fet it by the Com- Bad land fall. pais, and bend your Cables to the Anchors, A Dead Land, A head Ind. or a Boint of Land doth lie further out at Sea than the reft. Land mark. A Land mark, is any Mountain, Rock, Church, Wind- Toraida mil or the like, that the Pilot can know by comparing land. one by another how they bear by the Compass. A freach A Reach. is the diftance of two Points to far as you can fee them in a right line, as White-Hall and London bridg, or White-Hall and the end of Lambeth towards Chelfey. Ferch the Sound-

To make land:

43

Gal

#### - 44

Sounding-line. Sounding-line, this is bigger than the Dipfie-line, and is marked of two fathom next the lead with a piece of black leather, at three fathom the like, but flit; at 5 fathom with a piece of white cloth; at 7 fathom with a piece of red in a piece of white leather; at 15 with a white cloth, &c. The founding lead is fix or feven pound weight, and near a foor long, he that doth heave this lead flands by the horfe, or in the chains, and doth fing fathom by the mark 5. o. and a flaftment lefs, 4. o. this is to find where the Ship may fail by the depth of the water. Foul water is when the comes into fhallow water where the raifes the fand or ofe with her way, yet not touch the ground, but the cannot feel her helm fo well as in deep water.

When a Ship fails with a large wind towards the land, or a fair wind into a harbour, we fay the Bears in with the land or harbour. And when the would not come neer the land, but goeth more Room-way then her courfe, we fay the bears off; but a Shipboard, Bear off is used to every thing you would thruft from you. Bear up is to bring the Ship to go large or before the wind. To Bold off is when we heave the Cable at the Capitern, if it be great and ftiffe, or flimy with ofe, it furges or flips back unlefs they keep it close to the whelps, and then they either hold it fast with nippers, or brings it to the Jears Capitern, and this called Holding off. As you approach the thore, thorten your Sails, when you are in Harbour take in your Sails, and come to an anchor, wherein much judgement is required.

Neale to.

Bear in

Bear off

Bear up. Hold oil.

Surges

A Road:

Land locked. To Ride: Ride a great, Roade,

To know well the foundings, if it be **Dealed to**; that is, deep water clofe aboard the fhore, fhallow, or if the Lee under the weather fhore, or the Lee fhore be fandy, clay, ofie, or fowl and rocky ground, but the Lee fhore all men would fhun that can avoid it. Or a fload which is an open place neer the fhore. Or the Offing which is the open Sea from the fhore, or the middeft of any great ftream is called the offing. **Uand-lock**, is when the land is round about you.

Now the Ship is faid to Hide, fo long as the Anchors do hold and comes not home. To Hide a great Hoad is when the

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

45

the wind hath much power. They will strike their Top-Mafts, and the Yards alongft Ships, and the deeper the water is, it requires more Cable; when we have rid in any diftrefs we fay me have rid Bawle full, because the water Rides fires. broke into the Hawles, To Hide betwirt wind and tide,is Ride betwirt. when the wind and tide are contrary and ofequal power, tide. wind and which will make her rowle extreamly, yet not firain much the Cable. To ride thwart is to ride with her fide to the tide, Ride thwart and then the never firains it. To ride apilie is to pike your tide. Yards when you ride amongst many Ships. To ride croffe Ride apike. Ride cuolle. is to hoife the Main and fore-Y ards to the hounds, and topped alike. When the water is gone and the Ship liesdry, we fay the is Selved ; if her head but lie dry, the is Selved a head Sewed. but if the cannot all lie dry, the cannot Setu there. Water sew. bom is when there is no more water then will just bear her Water born. from the ground. The mater line is to that Bend or place Water line. fhe fhould fwim in when fhe is loaded.

Laftly, to appear a Ship is to lay out her anchors as is most To Moare. fit for her to ride by, and the ways are divers; as first, to Moar a fair Berth from any annoiance. To appear a trolle Moar croffe. is to lay one anchor to one fide of the fiream, and the other to the other right against one another, and fo they bear equally Ebb and Flood. To appear alongst is to lay an anchor Moar alongst amidit the fiream ahead, and another a fiern, when you fear driving a shore. **Moarre flott** is to moar quartering bewater shoth nether trols, nor alongst the tide. In an open road they will moar that way they think the wind will come the most to hurt them. **To appear a Brobiso**, is to have one Moar Provide anchor in the river, and a hawser a thore, which is moared with her head a shore; otherwise two Cables is the least and four Cables the best to moar by.

#### CHAP.

they be double manned, that is, to have twice fo many men as would fail her, they think it is too many, in regard of the charge, yet to speak true, there are few Merchant Ships in the World do any way exceed ours. And those men they cutertain in good Voyages, have fuch good Pay, and fuch acquaintance one with another in thipping themselves, that thirty or fourty of them would trouble a Man of War with three or four times their number manned with Preft Men, being half of them fcarce hale-Boulings. Yea, and many times a Pirat, who are commonly the best manned, but they fight only for Wealth, not for Honour nor Revenge, except they be extremely confirmined. But fuch a Ship as I have Ipoken of, well manned with rather too many than too few, with all fufficient Officers, Shor, Powder, Victual, and all their apurtenances, in my opinion, might well pais mufter for a time of War.

Now being at Sea, the Tops are feldom without one or other to look out for Purchale, becaufe he that first descries a Sail, if the prove Prize, is to have a good Sute of Apparel, or to much Money as it for down by order, for his Reward; as allo he that doth first enter a Ship, there is a certain Reward allowed him : When we fee a Ship alter her courfe, and ufeth all the means the can to fetch you up, you are the Chale, and he the Chafer. In giving chafe, or chafing, or to efcape being chafed, there is required an infinite Judgment and Experience, for there is no Rule for it; but the shortest way to tetch up your Chafe, is the beft. If you be too Lee ward, get all your Tacks aboard, and fhape your Courfe as he doth, to meet him at the nearest Angle you can, then he must either alter his Courfe, and Tack as you Tack as near the wind as he can lie, to keep his own till night, and then strike a Hull, that you may not defery him by his Sails, or do his belt to lofe you in the dark; for look how much he falls to Lee ward, he falls to much in your way. If he be right a head of you, that is called a Stern-chafe, if you weather him, for every man in chafing doth feek to get the Weather, becaute you cannot board him, except you weather him, he will lash, or

The Sea-mans Grammar.

fuppole that the Earth at the fitlt framing was in the fuperficies regular and Spherical, as the Holy Scripture directs us to believe; becaufe the water covered and compafied all the face of the Earth, allo that the face of the Earth was equal to that of the Sea. Damascene notefli, that the unevennels and irregularity, which now is feen in the Earth's Superficies, was cauled by taking fome parts out of the upper face of the Earth in fundry places to make it more hollow, and lay them in other places to make it more convex, or by railing up fome part, and depreffing others to make room and receit for the Sea, that mutation being wrought by the power of the word of the Lord, Let the waters be gathered into one place, that the dry land may appear. As for Aquinas, Dionyfus, Catharianus, and fome Divines that conceited there was no mutation, but a violent accumulation of the waters, or heaping them up on high is unreasonable; because it is against nature, that water being a flexible and a ponderous body, to to confift and ftay it felf, and not fall to the lower parts about it ; where in nature there is nothing to hinder it; or, if it be reftrained fupernaturally by the hand and bridle of Almighty God, left it should overwhelm and drown all the Land, it must follow, that God even in the very inflitution of Nature imposed a perpendal violence upon Nature. And this withal, that at the Deluge there was no necessity to break up the Springs of the Deep, and to open the Cataracts of Heaven, and pour down water continually fo many days and nights together, feeing the only withdrawing of that hand, or leting go of that bridle which reftraineth the water, would preferrily have overwhel- How all the med all.

But both by Scriptures, the experience of Navigators, land above the and reason, in making estimation of the depth of the Sea, supernetes of the Sea hath reckon not only the height of the Hills above the common made room for Superficies of the Earth, but the height of all the dry Land the Sea, thereabove the Superficies of the Sea, because the whole mass int fore they are Earth that now appeareth above the waters, being taken height and as it were out of the places which the waters now possels, depth.

Hills and dry Superficies of

49

н

mult

that fill defories a Ship, or enters a Frize.

His Reward

56

How to give chuie, and estape the Cha er.

must be equal to the place out of which it was taken ; fo confequently it feemeth, that the height or elevation of the one should answer the descending or depth of the other; and therefore in estimating the depth of the Sea, we consider not only the erection of the Hills above the ordinary land, but the advantage of the dry land above the Sea; which latter, I mean the height of the ordinary main-land, excluding the Hills, which properly answer the extraordinary Deeps. and Whirl-pools in the Sea. The reft is held more in large Continents above the Sea, than that of the Hills is above the land.

That there is fmall difference berwixt the fprings of the Earth, and their falling into the Sca.

cu: fijons.

For that the plain face of the dry land is not level, or equally diftant from the Center, but hath a great defcent towards the Sea, and a rifing towards the midland parts, although it first riting out appear not plainly to the eye, yet to reason it is most manifeft; because we find that part of the Earth the Sea covereth descendeth lower and lower towards the Sea. For the Sea, which touching the upper face of it, is known by nature to be level, and evenly diftant from the Center, is observed to wax deeper and deeper, the further one faileth from the flore towards the main Ocean: even fo in that part which is uncovered, the ftreamings of Rivers on all fides from the Midland parts towards the Sea, fliding from the higher to the lower, declareth fo much; whole courses are some 1000. or 2000 miles, in which declination, Pliny in his derivation of water requireth one cubit of declining in 240 foot of proceeding. But Columella, Vitruvius, Paladins, and others, in their conduction of waters require fomewhat lefs; namely, that in the proceeding of 200, foot forward, there should be allowedone foot of defcending downward, which yet in the courfe of ... 1000. miles, as Danubius, Velgha, or Indus, &c. have fo much or more, which will make five miles of defcent in perpendicular account, and in the course of 2000. or more, as Nilur, Niger, and the River of the Amazons have ten miles or more of the like defcent.

The determi-These are not taken as rules of necessity, as though water nerion of thefe could not run without that advantage, for that reject the con-

The Seamans Grammar.

554

#### CHAP. XII.

Confiderations for a Sea Captain in the choice of his Ship, and in placing his Ordnance. In giving Chale, Boarding, and entring a Man of War like himself, or a defending Merchant-man-

IN Land-fervice we call a Man of War a Souldier, either How to chufe a L on Foot or Horle, and at Sea a Ship, which if the be Ship fit to not, as well built, conditioned, and provided, as near make a Man, fitting fuch an Imployment, as may be, the may prove of War. (either) as a Horfeman that knoweth not how to hold his Reins, keep his feat in his faddle and ftirrups, carry his Body, nor how to help his Horfe with leg and four in a curvet, gal. lop, or ftop; or as an excellent Horfeman that knoweth all. this, mounted upon a Jade that will do nothing, which were he mounted according to his Experience, he would do more with that one, than half a dozen of the other, though as well provided as himfelf. But I confeis, every Horfeman cannot mount himfelf alike, neither every Seaman fhip him-. felf as he would, I mean not for outward Ornament, which the better they are, the lefs to be difliked ; for there cannot be a braver fight than a Ship in her Bravery, but of a competent fufficiency, as the business requireth. But were I to chufe a Ship for my felf, I would have her fail well, yet ftrongly built, her Decks flush and flat, and so roomy that men might pass with ease; her Bow and Chase to Gally like contrived, fhould bear as many Ordnance as with conveniency lhe could, for that always cometh molt to fight, and to ftiff, the should bear a stiff Sail, and bear out her lower Tier in any reasonable weather; neither should her Gun room be unprovided; not manned like a Merchant-man, which if they



Heeld.

Overfet.

Walt.

Iron fick.

Trim.

Overthrow.

Wall reared.

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

her Bow, but the mean is the belt. The Looming of a Ship is her prospective, that is, as she doth shew great or little: Her water-draught is fo many foot as the goes in the water, but the Ships that draw most water are commonly the most wholfome, but the leaft draught goes belt but rolls moft, and we fay a Ship doth Deelt on Starboard or Larboard, that is, to that fide the doth lean most.

To Operfet or overthrow a Ship, is by bearing too much Sail you bring her Keel upwards, or on thore overthrow her by grounding her, fo that the falls upon one fide; and we fay a Ship is mait when the is not ftiff, and hath not Ballaft enough in her to keep her fliff. And Wall reared when the is right built up, after the comes to her bearing it makes her ill shapen and unfeemly, but it gives her within much room, and the is very whollome, if her bearing be well laid out. The Masting of a Ship is much to be confidered, and will much caufe her to fail well or ill, as I have related in the Mafting a Ship. Grouficit, is when the Bolts, Spikes, or Nails are to daten with ruft they fland hollow in the Planks, and fo makes her Leak, the which to prevent, they use to put Lead over all the Bolt-heads under water. Laftly, the trimming of a Ship doth much amend or impair her failing, and fo alter her condition. To find her drim, that is, how the will fall belt; is by trying her failing with another Ship, fo many Glaffes trimmed a head, and to many a itern, and to many upon an even Keel; also the easing of her Masts and Shrowds, for some Ships will fail much better when they are flack than when they are taut.

#### CHAP

The Seamans Grammar.

conveyers of waters in these times content themselves with one Inch in 600. foot, as Philander and Vitruvius obferved. but is rather under a rule of commodity for expedition and wholfomeness of water to conveyed, left refting too long in Pipes it should contract fome unwholiome condition, or elfe through the flackness of motion, or long closeness, or banishment from the air, gather fome aptnels and dilpolition to putrifie. Although I fay, fuch excels of advantage as in the Artificial conveyance of Waters the forenamed Authors require, be not of neceffity exacted in the natural derivation of them, yet certain it is, that the defcent of Rivers being continually, and their course long, and in many places fwift, and in fome places headlong and furious ; the differences of height Note, the difor advantage cannot be great betwixt the fprings of the Rivers, and their outlets, betwixt the first rifing out of the Earth, fprings of the and their falling into the Sea: unto which declivity of land, Rivers, and feeing the deepnels of the Sea in proportion answer, as I before their falling declared, and not only to the height of the Hills : it is concluded, that the deepneis to be much more than the Philosophers commonly reputed: and although the deepness of the Sardinian Sea, which Aristotle faith, was the deepest of the Mediterranean, recorded by Posidonius in Strabo, to have been found but 1000, fathom, which is but a mile and a fifth part, and the greatest breadth not past 600. miles: then seeing if in so narrow a Sea it be fo deep, what may we effeem the main Ocean to be, that in many places is five times fo broad, feeing the broader the Seas are, of they be intire and free from Islands, they are answerably observed to be the deeper. If you defire any further farisfaction, read the first part of Purchas his Pilgrimage, where you may read how to find all those Authors at large. Now because he hath taken near 100. times as much from me. I have made bold to borrow this from him, feeing he hath founded fuch deep Waters for this our Ship to fail in, being a Gentleman whole perfon I loved, and whole memory and vertues I will ever honour.

H 2

ference be--twixt the into the Sea is not great.

51

СНАР.

52

A wholfome

Ship.

Ship.

### CHAP. XI.

Proper Sea terms belonging to the good or bad condition of Ships, how to find them and amend them.

Ship that will try, hull, and ride well at Anchor, we

call a wholefome Strip. A long Ship that draws

much water will do all this, but if she draw much water, and be short, she may Hull well; but neither try nor ride well; if the draw little water and be long, the may try and ride well, but never Hull well, which is called an un-• whellome Ship. The Howing in of a Ship is when the An unwholfome Ship. is past the breadth of her bearing the is brought in narrow Howfing a to her upper works: it is certain this makes her wholfome in the Sea without rowling, because the weight of her Ord. nance doth counterpoife her breadth under water, but it is not lo good in a Man of War; becaufe it taketh away a great deal of her room, nor will her Tacks ever fo well come Tigring. aboard as if the were laid out aloft, and not Flaring, which is when the is a little Howfing in, near the water, and then the upper work doth hang over again, and is laid out broader aloft, this makes a Ship more roomy aloft for men to use their arms in, but Sir Walter Rawleigh's proportion, which is to be proportionably wrought to her other work is the beft; because the counterpoise on each fide doth make her fwim perpendicular or firaight, and confequently fready, which Æ is the beft.

> If a Ship be narrow, and her bearing either not laid out enough or too low, then you mult make her broader and her bearing the higher by ripping off the Planks two or three

#### The Seamans Grammar.

53

three ftrakes under water, and as much above, and put-other Timbers upon the first, and then put on the Planks upon those Timbers, this will make her bear a better Sait, but it is an hinderance to her Sailing, this is to be done when a Ship, is Crank filoco; and will bear no Sail, and is called Crank file Furring. Note allo, that when a Ship hath a deep Keel it Furring. doth keep her from rowling. If the be floaty and her Keel fhallow put on another Keel under the full to make it deeper, for it will make her hold more in the water, this we call a falle Hecl. Likewile if her Stem be too flat to make A falk Keel. ther cut water the better, and not gripe, which is when the Gripe. will not keep a wind well; fix another Stem before it, and that is called a falle Stem, which will make her rid more A fale Stem way, and bear a better Sail. Also the film of a Ship is as The Run. much to be regarded, for if it be too short and too full below, the water comes but flowly to the Rudder, becaufe the force of it is broken by her breadth, and then to put a falle Stem post to lengthen her is the next remedy, but to length en her is better; for when a Ship comes off handfomely. by degrees, and her Tuck doth not lie too low, which will hinder the water from coming fwiftly to the Rudder, makes her she cannot steer well, and they are called as they are, a good run of a bad. When a Ship hash loft a piece of her A good find. Keel, and that we cannot come well to mend it, you must A bad Runpatch a new piece unto it, and bind it with a Stirrup, which A Sirrup. is an Iron comes round about it, and the Keel up to the other fide, of the Ship, whereto it is ftrongly nailed with Spikes. Her fake also may be a defect, which is fo much of the Hull, Her Rake. as by a perpendicular line the end of the Keel is from the fetting on of the Stem, fo much as is without that forward on, and in like manner the fetting in of her Stem-Poil. Your Frenchmen gives great Rakes for wards on, which makes her give good way, and keep a good wind, but if the have not a full Bow, the will pitch her Head extreamly in the Sea. If the have but a finall Rake, the is to bluff that the Seas meets her fo fuddenly upon the Pows the cannot cite the water much, but the longer a Ship is, the fuller should be h27

The 4 quarter Masters 5-a piece, or-	
The Cooper	7
The Chyrurgions Mates	4
The Gunners Mate	4
The Carpenters Mate 5	4
The Corporal	<b>4</b> .
The quarter Gunners- 4	3-
The Trumpeters Mate-3-	3
The Steward4	2
The Cook '	3
The Coxfwain4	3
	3
The Swabber	3

In English Ships they feldom use any Marshal, whose shares amongs the French is equal with the Boatswains, all the rest of the Younkers, or Fore-mast-men according to their deserts, some three, some two and a half, some one and a half, and the Boysone, which is a single share, or one and a half, or as they do deserve.

Now the Mafter, or his right hand Mate, the Gunner, Boatfwain, and four Quarter Mafters do make the fhares, not the Captain who hath only this priviledge, to take away half a fhare, or a whole fhare at most, to give from one to another as he beft pleafeth.

For to learn to observe the Altitude, Latitude, Longitude, Amplitude, the Variation of the Compass, the Suns Azimuth and Almicanter, to this the Sun and Moon, and know the Tides, your Rombs, prick your Card, lay your Compass, get fome of these Books, but practice is the best.

Mafter Wrights Errors of Navigation. Mafter Taps Sea-mans Kalendar. The Art of Navigation. The Sea Regiment. The Sea-mans Secret: Mafter Gunters Works. The Sea-mans Glafs for the Scale. The New Attractive for Variation. Mafter Wright for use of the Globe: Mafter Hewes for the fame.

Inftruments

The Sea-mans Grammar.

or go large, if you gather on him that way, he will try you before the Wind's then if your Ordnance cannor reach him, if he can out-ftrip you, he is gone. But fuppole you are to Windward, if he clap clofe by a wind, and there goes ahead-Sea, and yours a Lee-ward Ship, if you do the like your Ship will fo bear againff the Sea, the will make no way; therefore you must go a little more large, though you chafe under his Lee till you can run a head.

Board and Board, is when two Ships lie together fide by Board and fide, but he that knoweth how to defend himfelf, and work board. well, will to cun his Ship, as force you to enter upon his quarter, which is the highest part of the Ship, and but the Mifen Shrowds to enter by, from whence he may do you much hurt with little danger, except you fire him, which a Pirat will never do, neither fink you, if he can chufe, except you be able to force him to defend himfelf. But in a Sea fight we call Boarding, in Boarding where we can; the greatest advantage for your Ordnance, is to board him thwart the Hawfe, becaufe you may use all the Ordnance you have on one fide, and the only them in her Prow; but the best and fafest boarding for entring, is on the Bow, but you Boarding and must be careful to clear the Decks with burning Granadoes, couring a Ship Fire-pots, Pouches of Powder, to which give fire by a Gunpowder Match, to prevent Trains to the powder theff; which Powder chefis are long Boards joyned like a Triangle, with divers broad ledges on either fide, wherein lieth as many Pebble fromes or Beatch as can there lie; those being fired, will make all clear before them. Befides, in an extremity a man would rather blow up the quarter-Deck, half-Deck, Fore-caffle, or any thing, than be taken by him he knows a mortal Enemy; and commonly there are more men loft in entering, if the Chafe fland. to her defence, in an inftant, than in a long Fight, board and board, if the be provided of her close Fights. I contess, the charging upon Trenches, and the entrances of a Breach in a Rampire, are Attempts as desperate as a man would think' could be performed, but he that hath tried himfelf as oft in the entring a refting Ship as I have done both them and the other,

58

Evident figns

that a Chafe

will fight,

other, he would furely confeis there is no fuch dangerous Service ashore, as a refolved refolute Fight at Sea. A Ships close Fights, are small ledges of Wood laid cross one another like the Grates of Iron in a Prifons-window, betwixt the main Mast, and the Fore-mast, and are called Gratings, or Nettings, as is faid, which are made of fmall Ropes, much in like manner, covered with a Sail; the which to undo, is to heave a Kedger, or fix a Grapling into them, tied in a Rope, but a Chain of Iron is better, and sheering off will tear it in pieces, if the Rope and Anchor hold; fome have used Sheer-hooks, which are Hooks like Sickles fixed in the ends of the Yardsarms, that if a Ship under fail come to board her, those Sheers will cut her Shrowds, and spoil her Tackling; but they are to fubject to break their own Yards, and cut all the Ropes comes from the Top fails, they are out of requelt. To conclude, if a Ship be open, prefently to board her, is the belt way to take her. But if you fee your Chafe ftrip himfelf into fighting Sails, that is, to put out his Colours in the Poop, his Flag in the Main-top, his Streamers or Pendants at the ends of his Yards-arms, furl his Spret-fail, pike his Mifen, and fling his Main yard, provide your felf to fight. Now becaufe I would not be tedious in describing a Fight at Sea, I have troubled you with this fort Preamble, that you may the plainlier understand it.



### The Sea-mans Grammar. 63

which is two Squadrons like two Triangles for the two Horns, and fo the reft of the Squadrons behind each other a good diftance, and the General in the midft of the half Circle, from whence he feeth all his Fleer, and fendeth his directions, as he finds occasion to whom he pleafeth.

Now between two Navies they use often, especially in a Harbour or Road where they are at Anchor, to fill old Barks with Pitch, Tarr, Train-oyl, Lynfeed-oyl, Brimstone, Rozin, Reeds, with dry Wood, and such Combustible things, sometimes they link three or four together in the night, and put them adrift as they find occasion. To pass a Fort forme will make both Ships and Sails all black, but it the Fort keep but a fire on the other fide, and all the pieces point blank with the fire, if they discharge what is betwixt them and the fire, the flot will hit, if the Rule be truly observed; for when a Ship is betwixt the fire and you she doth keep you from feeing it till the be pass to be used as you find occasions, and therefore experience must be the best Tutor.

#### CHAP. XIV.

How they divide their Ibares in a man of War, what Books and Instruments are fit for a Sea man, with divers advertifements for Sea men, and the use of the Petty Tally.

livided thus in thar		St.
The Captain hath-	-10	-In fome but 9
The Lieutenant	-9-or ashe agreeth w	ith the Captain.
The Mafter		-In fome but 7.
The Mates		5
The Chyrurgion -		3
the Gunner		5
he Boatswain	6	
The Carpenter		Ś

They hang out a Fiag of Truce, hale him a main, abale, or take in his Flag, firike their Sails and come aboard with their Gaptain, Purfer and Gunner, with their Committion, Cosker, or Bills of Loading. Out goes the Boat, they are lanched from the Ship fice, entertain them with a general cry. God lave the Caprain and all the Company, with the Trumpets founding, examine them in particular, and then conclude your conditions, with feaffing, freedom, or punifkment, as you find occasion; but always have as much careto their Wounded as your own, and if there be either young Women or Aged men, use them nobly, which is ever the nature of a generous disposition. To conclude, if you surprize him, or enter perforce, you may flow the men, rifle, pillage, or lack, and cry a Prize.

· How a prize doub send,

and slow to

entertala him

Ecaman like.

How to call a

War, and or-

Couniel of

der a Navy

at Sea.

To call a Council of War in a Pleet : There is your Council of War to manage all bufineffes of import, and the Common Council for matters of fmall moment, when they would have a meeting, where the Admiral doth appoint it; if in the Admiral, they hang bue a Flag in the main Shrowds ; if in the Vice Admiral, in the Fore forowds ; if in the Rear-Adaptiral, in the Milen ; If there be many Squadrons, the Admiral of each Squadron upon fundry occasions doth carry in their main-Tops, Flags of fundry Colours, or elfe they are dultinguished by leveral Pendants from the Yard arms; every night or morning they are to come under the Lee of the Admiral to fature him and know his pleafure, but no Admiral of any Squadron is to bear his Flag in the main Top, in the prefence of the Admiral General, except the Admiral come aboard of him to Council, to Dinner, or Collation, and fo any Ship effe where he fo refideth during that time, is to wear his Flag in the main Top. They ule to martial or order those Squadrons in ranks like Manaples, which is four fquare, if the Wind and Sea permits, a good berth or diffance from each other, that they becalm not one another, nor come not foul of each other ; the General commonly in the midit, his Vice Admiral in the front, and his Reer Admiral in the Reer ; or otherwife like a half Moon, - which

### The Sea-mans Grammar.

#### CHAP. XIII.

How to Manage a Fight at Sea, with the proper Terms in a Fight largely expressed, and the ordering of a Navy at Sea.

**P**OR this Master-piece of this Work, I confess I might do better to leave it to every particular mans conceit as it is, or those of longer practice or more experience, yet becaufe I have feen many Books of the Art of War by Land, and never any for the Sea, feeing all men to filent in this most difficult fervice, and there are fo many young Captains, and others that defire to be Captains, who know very Land, sone for little, or nothing at all to any purpole, for their better un- the Sea. deritanding I have proceeded thus far; now for this that follows, what I have feen, done, and conceived by my fmall experience, I refer me to their friendly constructions, and well advifed confiderations.

A Sail, how bears fhe or flands fhe, to Windward or Leeward; fet him by the Compass; he stands right a head, or on the Weather-Bow, or Lee Bow, let flie your colours if you have a confort, elfe not. Out with all your Sails, a fleady man to the helm, fit close to keep her fteady, gibe him chafe To give chafe. or fetch him up ; he holds his own, no, we gather on him. Captain, out goes his Flag and Pendants, also his malle Walte Clothes. Clothes and Cop armings, which is a long red Cloth 2bont three quarters of a yard broad, edged on each fide with Calico or white Linnen Cloth, that goeth round about the Ship on the out-fides of all her upper works fore and aft, and before the Cubbridge heads, also about the fore and main Tops, as well for the countenance and grace of the Ship, as to cover the men from being feen, he furles and flings his main

Many Books of the Art of War for the

Top-armings.

#### 60

#### The Seamans Grammar.

Main-yard, in goes his Spret-fail. Thus they use to firip them-Fighting Sails,

a Fight.

man over:

Board.

felves into their Most Sails, or Fighting Sails, which is. Totale a Ship. only the Fore fail, the Main and Fore top Sails, because the reft should not be fired nor spoiled ; besides they would be troublefome to handle, hinder our fights and the using our Armes: he makes ready his close Fights fore and aft.

Mafter, how stands the Chafe ? Right on head I fay; Well -How to begin we hall reach him by and by; What's all ready? Yea, yea, every man to his Charge, dowle your Top-fail to falute him for the Sea, hale him with a noife of Trumpets: Whence is your Ship? Of Spain : Whence is yours? Of England : Are you a Merchant, or a Man of War? We are of the Sea. He waves us to Leeward with his drawn Sword, calls amain forthe King of Spain, and forings his Loufe, give him a Chafepiece with your Broad fide, and run a good berth a head of him; Done, done. We have the wind of him, and he tacks about, Tack you about alfo, and keep your Loufe, be yare at the helm, edg in with him, give him a volley of fmall flor, alfo your Prow and Broad-fide as before, and keep your Loute; He pays us fhot for fhot; Well, we shall require him; What are you ready again? Yea, yea. Try him once more, as before : Done, done : Keep your Loufe, and load your Ordnance again : Is all ready ? Yea, yea ; edg in with him again, begin with your Bow pieces, proceed with your Broad-fide, and let her fall off with the wind, to give her alfo your full Chafe, your Weather-Broadfide, and bring her round that the Stern may also discharge, and your Tacks close aboard again: Done, done, the wind veers, the Sea goes too high to board her, and we are flot through and through, and between wind and water. Try the Pump, bear How to fling a up the Helm; Master, let us breath and refresh a little, and fling a man over-board to ftep the Leaks; that is to trus him up about the middle in a piece of Canvas, and a rope to keep him from finking, and his arms at liberty, with a Malet in the one hand, and a Plug lapped in Okum, and well-Tarred in a Tarpawling clout in the other, which he will quickly beat into the hole or holes the Bullets, made ; What cheer Mates ? is.

The Sea-mans Grammar.

is all well ? All well, all well, all well ; Then make ready to bear up with him again, and withal your great and finall fhot charge him, and in the snoke board him thwart the Hawfe, on the Bow, mid Ships, or rather than fail, on his Quarter, or make fait your Graplings if you can to his close Fights and thear off. Captain, we are fowl on each other. and the Ship is on fire, cut any thing to get clear, and fmother the fire with wet Clothes. In such a cafe they will pre, fently be fuch friends, as to help one the other all they can to get clear, left they both fhould burn together and fink; and if they be generous, the fire quenched, drink kindly one to another; heave their Cans over board, and then begin a. gain as before.

Welt, Master, the day is spent, the night draws on, let A confutation us confult. Chirurgion, look to the wounded, and wind up and direction. the flain, with each a weight or Bullet at their Heads and in a Sea fight, Feet to make them fink, and give them three Guns for their bury their Funerals. Swabber, make clean the Ship; Purfer record dead. their Names: Watch, be vigilant to keep your berth to windward that we lofe him not in the night : Gunners, fpunge your Ordnance ; Souldiers, fcowre your Pieces : Carpenters, about your Leaks; Boatfwain and the reft, repair the Sails and Shrowds; and Cook, you observe your directions against the Morning watch : Boy, Holla Master, Holla, is the Kettle boiled? Yea, yea : Boatfwain, call up the men to Prayer and Break-faft.

Boy, fetch my Cellar of Bottels, a Health to you all fore and A preparation aft, courage my hearts for a fresh Charge ; Gunners, beat open for a fresh the Ports, and out with your lower Tire, and bring me from Charge. the Weather fide to the Lee, fo many Pieces as we have Ports to bear upon him. Mafter, lay him aboard Loufe for Loufe; Mid-thips men, fee the Tops and Yards well Manned, with Stones, Fire pors, and Brafs bails, to throw amongit them, before we enter, or if we be put off, charge them with all your great and fmall flot, in the finoke let us enter them in the Shrowds, and every Squadron at his belt advantage; to found Drums and Trumpets, and St. George for England.

and how they,

61

They
72

Rigging, well Rigged, ove	7	Sicepers - 3
Rigged 1	8   8	Spurkits 3
Runnings r	9	Spindle 8
Ratlings	9 3	Skupper, Skupper Leathers 9
Ropes, Breft Rope, ftanding	2	Sockets
Rope 20	5 19	Stearage II
Bolt-Ropes 2	2 8	Shiver 19
Entering Rope, Bucke	13	Shrowds, Taut the Shronds, Eafe the Shrouds 19
Rope, Bolt-Ropes, Por	t	Eafe the Shrouds 19
Ropes lear Ropes. Pre	- 19	Sling or Slings 21
venter-Rope, Top-Rope 2	7	Sheats 22
Leel-Kopes, Kudder Kope	- 12	Sinnet 24
Cat-Rope, Boy Rope Boa		Scafing 24
Rope, Cheft Rope 2	8	Seafen 25
Robins 2	1	Sarve, or Service
Reeve, and Reeveing	2	Spunyarn 24
Roufing 2	r 15	Splice Spliceing Room Splice
Rowling 4	9	Cut Splice 25: 20
Round in, Round aft 4		Cut Splice 25: 30 Shallop 26
Reach 4	3	Skiffe 25 Spell 37
Road 4	4	Spell 37
Ride, Ride a great Road		Shearing 28
Ride a Itreffe, Ride be		Switting 28
tween Wind and Lide, Rid	e l :	Sem fait
thwart Tide. Ride a Pike	19	Shank-painter 21
Ride Croite 44,4	\$ F	Stop 21
Rut of the Sea 4	7	Sails: Main-Sail, Fore Sail,
Roaring of the Sea 2	7 F	Main Top-Sail, fore-Top-
Rough Sea 4	7	Sail, Top gallant Sail, flud-
		ding-Sails, Milen and Mi-
S		fen Top-Sail, Spret, and
		Sprit fail, Top Sail, Drift-
Tocks	1	Sail, Netting-Sail 21
	2	Head Sails, after-Sails 32
		Stantions 72
Sweep	3	Seam, Monk-Seam, Round-
Skarfing, or Skarfed	31	Seam 32
		Stowage

# The Sea-mans Grammar. 65

#### Instruments fitting for a Sea-man,

Compasses to many Pair and Serts as you will, an Astrolabe Quadrant, a Cross Staff, a Back staff, an Astrolabe, a Notturnal.

A young Gentleman that defires command at Sea, onght well Advertifeto confider the condition of his Ship, Victuals, and Com. means for pany, nor must there be more Learners than Sailers, how flightly manders, Cap. foever many effeem Sailers, for all the work to fave Ship, Goods rains, and other and lives must lie upon them, especially in foul weather, then Officers. their labour, hazard, wet and cold is fo incredible I cannot express it. It is not then the number of them that here can fay at home, what I cannot do I can quickly learn, and what a great matter it is to Sail a Ship, or go to Sea; furely those for fome time will do more trouble than good, I confess it is most necessary fuch should go, but not too many in one Ship, for if the labour of threefcore should lie upon thirty, (as many times it doth) they are fo over-charged with labour, bruifes, and over-ftraining themfelves they fall Sick of one difeafe or o. ther, for there is no dalying nor excules with Storms, Gufts. over-grown Seas, and Lee shores, and when their victuals is putrified it endangers all : Men of all other professions in Lightning, Thunder, Storms and Tempefts, with Rain and Snow, may shelter themselves in dry houses by good fires, but those are the chief times Seamen must stand to their Tackling, and attend with all diligence their greatest labour upon the Decks. Many fuppole any thing is good enough to ferve men at Sea, and yet nothing fufficient for them alhore, either for their healths, for their eafe, or effate; A Commander at Sea should do well to think the contrary, and provide for himfelf and company in like manner; also ferioufly to confider what will be his charge to furnish himfelf at Sea with Bed. ding, Linnen, Arms, and Apparel, how to keep his Table aboard, and his expences on fhore, and provide his petty= Tally, The Pettywhich is a competent proportion (according to your number) of Tally. these particulars following.

Fine wheat flower close and well packed, Rice, Currants, Su-

gar;

## 66

# The Seamans Grammar

gar, Prunes, Cynamon, Ginger, Pepper, Cloves, green-Ginger, Oil, Butter, Holland Cheefe, or old Cheefe, Wine, vinegar, Canary Sack, Brand, the belt Wines, the belt Water, the juyce of Limmons for the forryy, white Bisker, Oatmeal, Gammons of Bacon, dryed Neats tongues, Beef packed up in Vineger, Legs of Mutton, minced and Itewed, and close packed up, with tried Severs or Butter in earthen pots. To entertain Strangers, Marmalade, Suckets, Almonds, Comfits and fuch like.

Some it may be will fay I would have men rather to feaft than fight; But I fay the want of those necessaries occasions the loss of more men than in any English Fleet hath been flain fince 88. For when a man is ill, or at the point of death. I would know whether a diff of buttered Rice with a little Cy. namon, Ginger, and Sugar, a little minced meet, or roft Beef. a few flew'd Prunes, a race of green Ginger, a Flapjack, a Can of fresh water brewed with a little Cynamon, and Sugar, be not better than a little Poor John, or Salt Fifb with Oil and Mustard, or Bisket, Butter, Cheefe, or Oatmeal-pettage on Fiftdays, or on Flesh days Salt-Beef, Pork and Peafe with fix shillings beer, this is your ordinary Ships allowance, and good for them that are well if well conditioned which is not always as Seamen can(too well)witnefs. Andafter a ftorm, when poor men are all wet, and fome have not to much as a cloth to thift them. thaking with cold few of those but will tell you, alittle Sack or Brandy is much better to keep them in health, than a little fmall Beer or cold water although it be fweet. Now that every one fhould provide things for himfelf, few of them have either that providence or means and there is neither Ale houfe Tavern, nor Inn to burn a Fagget in, neither Grocer, Poulterer, Apothecary, nor Butchers Shop, and therefore the use of this Petty Tally is necessary, and thus to be employed as there is occasion. To enertain Strangers, as they are in quality. every Commander should shew himself as like himself as hecan, as well for the credit of the Ship, and hisSetters forth as himfelf: but in that herein every one may moderate themfelves according to their own pleafures, therefore I leave it to their own

diferentions, and this brief Difeourfe, and my felf to their friend ty configuration, and good opinion. CHAP. The Sea-mans Grammar. 7 ed, over Masted, Taunt | Suck Pump, Bare Pump 2

Masted, over Masted, Taunt	Suck Pump, Bare Pump	9
Matted, under Matted, at	Prow	10
made-Maft, or Arm-Maft,	Pàying	13
Masts steps; spend a Mast,	Parfling	- <del>,</del> X <u>3</u> .
Ipring a Malt 40	Partners	16
Martnets 23	Pillow	16
Mats 24	Puttocks	19
Marling Marling foike 25	Parrels	20
Mafter and his Mate 34 Marfhall 35 Moar ; Moar croffe , Moar	Parbunkle	21
Marshall	Puddings	21
Moar, Moar croffe, Moar	Panch	24
alongit, Moar Proviso 45	Pilot	24
	Purfer	34
	Port	
2. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.	Predy	37
N.	Pike	-37
	Pafarado	42
Ails, Treenails - 4	Powder-Cheft	\$7
Skupper nails		
No near 27	<b>O</b> .	•
No near 37 Nealed to 44		
A CONTRACT OF	Jarters	6
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Quarter-Mafter	35
	Quoynes	64
Rlop	R	•
Okum *** Ta		
Obferverse 42	D Ungs	2
Offing. 44	<b>L</b> Rung-heads	2
Oyerblows 46	Ribs-	, 20
	Run	2
<b>P</b>	Rake	4
	Riders	- 5
Lanks five 4	Ramihead.	7
Ports 5	Rowle	12
Paul 8	Rudder, Rudder-Irons	12
Pump, brak-Pump, Can-Pump	Room, Bread-Room,	Cock-
Chain-Pump, Bar Pump, 3	Room	12
		gging
•		

70	The Sea-m	ans Grammar.
•.	Liounds 16	Ladder, Entering-Ladder,
	Hawler 20	Gallery-Ladder, Boltfprit-
	Harpings, Cat-Harpings 20	· Ladder 9
	Halyares 20	
	Horfe 21	
	Head-lines 21	
	Hooke-loof-Hook 24	
	Hitch 30	Furling Lines, Smitcing Line
	Hull 40	Bunt Lines, Clew Limes, 22
	Hullocks 41	
	Hold off 44	
	Hericano 47	
	• • • • •	Leech of a Sail 23, 32
	1	Lifts, Top the Lifts
	Y T !	Leggs 22
	Unkes . 30	Latchets
	j -	Lafhing 24
	K K	Eyar State
	A	Lieutenant 4 36
	99 7 Fal	Larboard 37
	K Eel Keelfon	Labour Sa State
	Knees	Large 41-
	Knight fore Knight main	Laske 41 Line, Diplea-line, Log-line, 42
	Knight 7	
	Knevels 7	Eand, Land to kenning, to
		Land, Land O Creat and
	Knot, a Wall Knot, a boling	lay a Land, Good Land, a land, Bad Land, a head
	Knot, a fbeen fhank Knot	Land, a Poingot Land, a.
	20	Land mark to raife a Land,
	Kedgers, and Kedging	
2	Keckle	Land locked 44
-		
	. L	M
	—	
	T Imber 2	Tould
	Loop, Loop hotes 7	WI Manger 10
		ø Mafted
		• • • • •

The Sea-ma	ns Grammar.
СНА	AP. XV.
or Members of a Ship,	of the Names of all the Parts and its Appurtenances, with age in which the Term (or Explained at Large.
Α	Page.
Pag	e. Bolts, viz
	Set
A Shank 7	Clinch
Flook	Rag >
Shoulder	Forelock
n An-2 Beam 22	9 I end
nors. Eye	Bowe, broad-Bowe narrow-
King	Bowe 9
Shocket j	Reaks Backs haut to
ichor, Sheat Anchor, ftrea Anchors, 1, 2,	2 DIG 10
	DIOCK, FIII DIOCK II
S. S. M. A. Shikawa Astronomic States and Stat	Buike, Buiks head II
	Diackets II
B	Bittacle II, 12
	Barnacles 13
<b>Uttocks</b>	Bronning, or Breaming 12
D Billage	4 Blocks, double-Blocks, vide 4 Pullies 19
Beds	
Sut-ends	5 Block-inap 20 4 Brales 22
Bluffe	4 Braces 22
Beams	Bolings, Boling-bridles, the Bo-
Bend vide Wale	6 lins, check the Bowlings, 23

	Bent	23	Cabin, great Cabin	11.
	Boule	84	Compais, Dark Compais	11
	Bonnet	24	Variation Compass	12
	Boat, a Long-boat		Carboles	12
	Bails	26	Calking, Calking-Irons -	13
	Bail or Free	27	Careene	13
	Boat, Trim-Boat, Wind Bo	Dat,	Gotes	16-
	Hold water, Forbear	17:	Cheeks	16
	Bight, Bitter, Bitters End	20	Cap	16
	Breftfaft	20		18
	Boye, or Boyes, Can-Bo	ves	Coller	18
	<i>•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••</i>	31		18
	Bonnet			19
	Balla ft, to trench Ballaft			19
	Boarfwain and his Mate	2.0	Can-hooks	-
	Bear, Bear in, Bear off,B	ear	Creengles	27
	up.	44	Clew	2.2
	Breeze	46		24
	Boarding	\$7		
			Cable-	
	<b>A</b> .	1	Splice a Cables as S	TOP
	C.		of Gable . Outile	
		2	ol Gable, Ouoile Cable, Fale, a Cal Pay more Cable, I cheap a Cable, End End, Bend Unbend a	SZ4
	Radle	I	Pays more Sables	
	Carling, Carling Kn		cheap a Cable End	for
		7	End: Bend Unbend a	
	Commings	7	ble	2
	Capítain, Bars	7	Courfe, main-Courfe, I'd	1
•	Jear-Capitain	- 8	Courfe	3 <b>T</b>
	Crab	2	Clew of a Sail	
	Clamps	. 6		nd.
	Culvertail	7	ing Coins	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Combe	ľ		33 34
141	Crofpiece	10		24
	Gat			э <del>т</del> 34
	Cubbridge head	11		эт 34
	Counter, upper and lower	IT	Corporal	35
			Coo	JJ Der
	• `			F 7-

The Sea-mans Grammar.				
Cooper and his Mate	26	Feather, Cut a Feather-	IO	· · ·
Coxfwain and his Mate	36	Free or Bail	27	
Cook and his Mate	36	Fenders	30	
Cunning	37	Flown	39	
Calm,	46	Flown Fly	29	
be Calmed	47	Founder, Foundering	40	
Chafe, to give Chafe	\$9	Floods	47	
D		G	- 7	
Ock	I	Arbord		···.
			- 9	
Dry	. I	Gudgions	12	
Deck, half-Deck, qua	rter-	Gun, Gun-Room	12	
Deck, flashDeck, camb	ered	Graveing	13	· ·
-Deck	6	Guy	20	
	Ō	Garner. Clew Garnet	22	
Daile David	IO	Goaring	22	
Dead-Mans Eye-	18	Gang	27	
Drabler	24	Gert	30	•
Drablers	\$31	Grateings -	32	
	- 9 <b>4</b> - <b>X</b>		32	
and defined of I prite the second	A 73	(TROP	37	
		Gunner and his Mate Goofe-wing	34	
E Arings		Goole-wing	41	
CArings	23	Guit	46	
Laic T	-37	Gale, a fresh Gale, a L		
Eddywind	<b>4</b> 6	Gale	46	
Ebbs	147			
Entering	-57	H		
And the second second second	\$2. <u>7</u> 4			
		Ooks		
Th Black	100	Foot	3	
Fabion		Howle	3.	
Faihion Faihion	्र <b>य</b>	Harohar Contrile IT.	<b>4</b>	•.
Floor Fore-Caftle	5 W	Hatches, Scuttle Hatch Hanfes	•	•
TVIC-CALLIE	.9		10	
<b>O</b>			ounds	

.

## N

Neap tides, are the Tides when the Moon is in the fecond and lait Quarter, and they are neither fo high, nor fo low, nor fo fwift as the Spring tides.

A Ship is beneaped, a term used, when the water does not flow high enough to bring a ship from off the ground, or out of a Dock, or over a Bar.

#### 0

The Offing, that is, fromward the shore, or out into the Sea; as The Ship stands for the Offing, that is, fails from the shore into the Sea. When a Ship keeps the middle of the Channel, and comes not near the shore, she is faid to keep in the Offing.

Off-ward, is contrary to the shore; as the stern of a Ship lies to the Offward, and her head to the shore ward, that is, her stern lies toward the Sea, and her head to the shore.

Overset, is turning over, but if a Ship turn over on a fide, when she is trimming a ground, it is called overthrown.

#### B

To Parcel a feam, is (after the Seam is caulked) to lay over it a narrow piece of Canvas, and pour thereon hot Pirch and Tar.

To Pay a feam, is to lay hot Pitch and Tar on (after Caulking) without Canvas.

To Ride a Peek, is when the Yards are fo ordered, that they feem to make the Figure of St. Andrews Cross.

To Purchafe, in a Ship bears the fame fense as draw many times, as the Capitain purchafes apace, that is, draws in the Cable apace.

#### Q

Quarter Winds, are when the Wind comes in abast the mainmatt-shrouds even with the Quarter.

The Sea-man's Grammar.				
Stowage	- 33	( Travas	12	
Shoot	33	Tiller	12	
Steward	35	Tarpawling	16,26	
Swabber	36	Trees, Croile Tre		
Sailers	26	Trees	16	
Steep Tubs	37	Waift Trees, Rouf	e Trees 32	
Steering	37	Truck -	17	
Starboard	37	Tackle	20	
Steady	37	Ties	21	
Sheat or Courfe	39	Tackes	22	
Spoon	40	Thoughts	26	
Sea, a head Sea	÷ 41	Thowles	26	
Surges	44	Tire of Ordnance	, as the I.	
Sew, Sewed	45	2 and 3 Tire	32	
Spout	46	a half Ťire	33	
Storm	4.6	Trumpeter	35	
Sea, a Rough Sea, ai	n over-	Tally	38	
grown Sea	47	Try	40	
Surges	47	Trough	40	
Ship: A wholfome Sh	ip, an	Tempeft	46	
unwholfome Ship,	How-	Tide, Tide of E	bbe, Tide	
fing a Ship, Flaring,	Crank-	., of Flood, a Wind	ward Tide	
fided, Furring, falf	e Keel,	a Leeward Tide	e, Tide o-	
Gripe, falle Stern, th	e Run,	ver, Tide gate, half Tide	Tide, and	
a good Run, a bad	Run ,	half Tide	47	
a Stirup, her Ral	ke, her	Eddy Tide	48	
Loome, Heel'd, o	verlet,	Top Armings	. 59	
Overthrow, Walt	'; Walf			
reared, Iron fick, Tr				
4	53554			
<del></del>		T7Iol	8	
T		V Vea, Vea,	Vea, Vea	
	• • •		27	
Imber, Rifeing Ti	mber 3	Veer, or the wind	Veers	
<b>L</b> Trunnions	4	Under the Sea	<b>4</b> 0 ,	
Tuck	4	· · ·	`	
Tranfome	4			

L

0

m'I

Wood

W	Water, dead-Water, Ed Water, Foul Water	42
Wale, Chain-Wale,	Water born, Water Li Water shot	44 ne, 45
Gun-Wale 6 Whelps 8 Windas 8	Wirlwind Waft-cloaths	46 59:
Waft, Waft boares, Waft Trees 9	Y	
Whipftaffe12War no more37Weather Coyle40	YArns, Rope-Yarns Younkers Yare	24. 36 37-

## CHAP. XVL

Anosber Alphabetical Table, Explaining all the Principal Sea Terms used in work of a Ship in all Windes and Weathers.

#### A

A FT or Abaft, fromward the Fore part of the Ship, or toward the Stern, as The Mafe hangs aft, that is towards the Stern.

How chear ye fore and oft, that is, how fares all yourShips Company.

Amain, a Word uled by a Man of War to his Enemy, and fignifies, Yield.

Strike Amain, that is, Lower your Top-fails.

The Anchor is a pick, that fignifies the Anchor is right under the Hawfe (or hole) through which the Cable belonging to the Anchor runs out,

The Anchor is a Cock bell, that is, hangs up and down by the Ships fide.

To Hoife, is to hale or lift up, as Hoife the water in, Hoife up the Yards.

The Sea-mans Grammar.

Hulling, when a Ship is at Sea, and takes in all her Sails, the is faid to Hull.

The Ship Labours, that is, rowls and tumbles much.

Land fall, is a term used, when we expect to see Land; as we had a good Land fall, that is made Land (or faw Land,) according to our Reckoning.

Land-locked, is when the Land lies round about us, fo that no point is open to the Sea.

Land-to, A Ship is faid to lie Land-to, when the is at fogreat a diftance as only just to differen the Land.

To Lafh, is to bind, as Lafh the Fifh on to the Maft, that is bind it to the Maft.

Launch, is to put out, as to Launch a Ship, is to put her forth of the Dock into the water, but it is fortimes likewife ufed in a Negative fenfe, as when a Yard is hoifted high enough, they ufually call aloud Launch-ble, that is hoife no more.

To lay the Land, is to lose fight of it.

The Lee shore, is that shore against which the Wind blows. Have a care of the Lee latch, that is take heed the Ship go not too much to Lee-wards.

A Ship lies by the Lee, that is, has all her fails lying flat against the Malts and Shrouds.

#### M

Mizon Soil, hath feveral words peculiar to it; as Set the Mizon, that is, fit the Mizon fail; Change the Mizon, that is, bring the Yard to the other fide of the Maft; Speck the Mizon, that is, put the Yard right up and down by the Maft; Spell: the Mizon, that is, let go the Sheet and peek it up.

To meor a Ship, is to lay out her Anchors in fuch a manner as is most convenient for her to ride by fafely.

N

Weather Gage, is when one Ship has the Wind (or is to weather) of another.

A loom Gale, a little Wind.

87

One Ship gales away from another. In fair weather when there is but little Wind that Ship which hath most Wind and fails fasteft is faid, to gale away from the other.

To greave a Ship, is to bring her to lye dry a ground, to burn off her old filth.

The Ship gripes, that is, turns her Head to the Wind more than the thould.

#### H

To Hale, is the fame as to pull

To over Hale, is when a Rope is haled too fliff, to hale it the contrary way, thereby to make it more flack.

To bail a Ship, is to call to her Company to know whither they are bound, &c. and is done after this manner, Hia the Ship! or only Hia! To which they answer Hile. Also to falute another Ship with Trumpets or the like, is called Hailing.

Fresh the Hawse, a term used when that part of the Cable that lies in the Hawse is fretted orchased, and they would have more Cable veered out, that another part of it may reft in the Hawse. When two Cables that come through two several Hawses are twisted, the untwisting them is called charing the Hawse. Thwart the Hawse, and rides upon the Hawse, are terms used when a Ship lies thwart or crois, or with her Stern just before, another Ships Hawse. Note, That the Hawses are the great Holes under the Head of the Ship, through which the Cables run when the lies at Anchor.

The Ship beels, that is, inclines more to one fide than the other, as five beels to Starboard, that is, turns up her Larboardfide to he down on the Starboard.

To Hitch, is to catch hold.

The Hold of a Ship, is that part betwirt the Keelfon and the lower Deck, where all Goods, Stores, and Victuals do lie. Rummidge the Hold, is used for removing or clearing the Goods and things in the Hole. Storying the Hold, is when they take goods into the Hold. To

# The Sea-mans Grammar.

75

The Anchor is foul, that is, the Cable is got about the Fluke. An Awning, A Sail or the like, fupported like a Canopy over the Deck, to prevent, the foorching heat of the Sun in hot Climates.

₿

To bale, to lade Water out of the Ships Hold with Buckets, or the like.

Trench the Ballast, divide or separate it.

The Ballaft shoots, that is, runs over from one fide to the other.

To bear with the Land, &c. To fail towards it.

To bear in, that is, to fail before or with a Wind into a Harbour or Channel.

A Piece of Ordnance doth come to bear, that is, lies right with the Mark.

Bear up, a term used in conding the Ship, when they would have her fail more before the Wind.

Bear up round, put her right before the Wind.

To Belage, to make fast any running Rope.

To Bend a Cable, is to make it faft.

A Birth, a convenient fpace to moor a Ship in.

A Bight, any part of a Rope between the ends.

The Bilge, the breadth of the place the Ship refts on when the is a ground.

The Ship is bilged, that is, has ftruck off fome of her Timber on a Rock or Anchor, and forings a Leak.

A Bittake, that whereon the Compafs stands.

A Bitter, a turn of a Cable about the Bits.

The Bits, two Main-fquare pieces of Timber, to which the Cables are failtned when the Ship rides at Anchor.

A Bonnet, an Addition to another fail, when they fasten it on, they fay, Lace on the Bonnet; and when they take it off, Shake of the Bonnet; it is very rarely fasten'd to any other than the Mizon, Main, Fore-fail, and Sprit-fail, and those Sails are called Courses, as Main-course and Bonnet, not Main-fail and Bonnet.

L 2

X

A Boom, a long Pole used to fpread out the Clew of the Studding-fail, &c.

Beard and Beard, a term used when two Shipscome fo near as to touch one another.

To go aboard, to go into a Ship.

76

To make a board, or board it up, is to turn to Windward. To break Bulk, to open the Hold, and take out goods thence.

С

Careening, is bringing a Ship to lye down on one fide while they trim and caulk the other.

Caulking, is driving of Ockham, Span hair, and the like into all the feams of the Ship, to keep out Water.

To Chafe, is to purfue another Ship, and the Ship fo purfue ed is called the Chafe.

To Cond or Cun, is to direct or guide, and to cun a Ship is to direct the Perfon at Helm how to fteer her: If the Ship go before the Wind, then he who cunsthe Ship ufes thefe terms to him at Helm, Starboard, Larboard, Port, Helm a Midfhips. Starboard, is to put the Helm to the Starboard, (or right) fide, to make the Ship go to the Larboard (or left;) for the Ship always fails contrary to the Helm. In keeping the Ship near the Wind, thefe terms are ufed, Loof, Keepyour Loof, Fall not off, Veer no more, keep her to, touch the Wind, have a care of the Lee-latch. To make her go more large, they fay, Eafe the Helm, no near, bear up. To keep her upon the fame Point, they ufe, Steddy, or as you go, and the like. The Ship goes Lasking, Quartering, Veering, or Large; are terms of the fame fignification, viz. that fhe neither goes by a Wind nor before the wind, but betwixt both.

The Courfe, is that Point of the Compais on which the Ship fails : Alfo the Sails are called Courfes.

Cut the Sail, that is, unfurl it, and let it fall down. A fail is well cut, that is, well fashioned.

77

#### D

Dead-water, the Eddy water at the Stern of the Ship. To Difembogue, is to go out of the Mouth or Strait of a Gulph.

To difpart, is to find out the Difference of Diameters of Metals betwixt the breech and mouth of a Piece of Ordnance. The Deck is flush fore and aft, that is, is laid from stem to stern without any falls or rifings.

#### Е

End for End, a Term used when a Rope runs all out of the block, fo that it is unreeved; as when a Cable (or Hawfer) runs all out at the Hawfe, we fay, the Cable at the Hawfe is run out End for End.

#### F

A Fathom, a Measure containing fix Feet.

A Fack, is one Circle of any Rope or Cable quoil'd up round.

To farthel (or furl) a Sail, is to wrap it up close together, and bind it with little ftrings called Caskets, fast to the Yard.

Tofifh a Maft, or Yard, is to fasten a piece of Timber or Plank to the Mast or Yard to strengthen it, which Plank is called a Fifh.

To lower or firike the Flag, is to pull it down upon the Cap. and in Fight is a token of yielding; but otherwife of great respect.

To beave out the Flog, is to wrap it about the Staff.

Free the Boat, or Ship, is to bale or pump the water out.

#### G

The Ships Gage, is fo many Foot as fhe finks in the Water; or (to fpeak now like a Scaman) fo many Foot of Water as fhe draws. L 3 Weather

## 88

## The Sea-mans Grammar.

to the Bore of a Piece, and a **Cale flot** is any kind of fmall Bullets, Nails, old Iron, or the like to put into the Cafe to shoot out of the Ordnance or Murderers, these will do much mischief when we lie board and board : but for Spunges and Rammers they use now, a stiff Rope a little more than the length of the Piece, which you may turn and wind within board as you will, with much more ease and fastery than the other.

Round that is a round Bullet for any Piece : Grofs har Round-fhot. flot is alfo a Round-thot, but it hath a long fpike of Iron caft Crofs-barthor. with it, as if it did go through the midft of it, the ends where-To arm a of are commonly armed for fear of burlting the Piece. fhor. which is to bind a little Ohum in a little Canvals at the end of each Pike. Trundle that is only a bolt of Iron fix. Trundle-foot teen or eighteen Inches in length; at both ends fharp pointed. and about a handful from each end a round broad bowl of lead according to the Bore of the Piece caft upon it. Langrel, Langrel-fhot. that runs loofe with a Shackely to be hortened when you put it into the Piece, and when it flies out it doth foread it felf, it hath at the end of either Bar a half Bullet either of Lead or Iron. . Chain fot is two Bullets with a Chain be-Chain-fhot. twixt them, and lome are contrived round as in a Ball, yet will fpread in flying their full length in breadth; all thefe are used when you are near a Ship to shoot down Masts, Yards, Shrouds, tear the Sails, spoil the men, or any thing that is above the Decks. Fire works are divers, and of Fire works. Arrows of many Compositions, as Arrows trimined with Wild-fire to Wild-fire. flick in the Sails or Shipsfile, fhot burning. Bikes of Pikes of Wilp Wild-fire to ftrike burning into a Shipe fiele to fire her. There fire. Granadoes of is also divers forts of Branaboes, fome to break and fly in divers forts. abundance of pieces every way, as will your Brafs halls, Brafs-Balk. and Earthen-pots, which when they are covered with Quartered Bullets fluck in Pitch, and the Pots filled with good Powder, in a crowd of people will make an incredible flaughter: fome will burn under water, and never extinguish till the fluff be confumed; fome only will burn and fume out a most stinking poylon smoke; some, being but only an Oil, being anoinThe Sea-mans Grammar,

A Quoil, is a Rope or Cable laid up round one Fack over another, and the laying the Fack, is called quoiling.

R

A Reach, is the Diftance between any two points of Land, that lie in a Right-line one from another.

To Reeve, is to put a Rope through a Block ; and to pull a Rope out of a Block is called unreeving the Rope.

To Ride, When a ship's Anchor holds her fast, so that she does not drive with Wind or Tide, she is faid to ride at Anchor.

To Ride athwart, is to ride with the Ships fide to the Tide. To Ride betwixt Wind and Tide, is when the Wind and Tide are contrary and have equal frength.

To Ride Hawfe fall, is when in a rough Sea the Water breaks Into the Hawfes.

A Road, is any place near the Land where Ships may ride at Anchor, and a Ship riding there is called a Roader.

Rowfein, (that is, Hale-in) proper only to the Cable or Hawfer, and is used when the Cable or Hawfer is flack to make it taut or ftraight.

S

A Sail. Befides its proper fignification (as belonging to the feveral Yards, from which it takes its various Names, as Mainfail,  $\mathcal{O}_{c.}$ ) it fignifies alfo a Ship, as when at Sea we defery a Ship, we cry out, A fail A fail Likewife if we fpeak of a Fleet (or a number of Ships together) we fay the Fleet con-fifted of 40 or 50 fail, and not 40 or 50 Ships.

To Serve a Rope, is to wind fomthing about it, to keep it from fretting out.

To Seaze, is to make fast, or bind.

The Ship feels, that is, when on a fudden the lies down on her fide, and tumbles from one fide to the other.

The Ship fends, that is, her head or ftern falls deep in thr trough or hollow of the Sea.

M

To

To Settle a Deck, is to lay it lower.

The Ship is fewed, that is, the Water is gone from her.

The Ship thears, that is, goes in and out, and not right forward.

To Sound, is to try with a line or other thing how deep the Water is.

The Ship hath (pent her Masts, that is, her Masts have been broke by foul Weather; but if a Ship lofe her Mafts in Fight, we fay, ber Masts were hot by the Board.

To Splice Ropes, is to untwift two ends of Ropes, and then twift them both together, and fasten them with binding a ftring about them.

The Sail is (plus, that is, blown to pieces.

The Ship (pooms, that is, goes right before the wind without any fail.

Spring tides, are the Tides at New and Full-moon, which flow highest and ebb lowest, and run strongest.

The Bow-fprit Steeves, that is, flands too upright. Steeving is likewife used by Merchants when they flow Corton or Wool, which being forced in with skrews, they call Steeving their Cotton or Wool

#### Т

Tack about, that is, bring the Ships head about to lie the other way.

Tallee aft the fleats, a term used for haling aft the fleats of the Main or Fore-fail.

A windward Tide, when the Tide runs against Wind.

A Leeward Tide, when the Wind and Tide go both one way. \*

ATide gate, where the Tide run ftrong.

To Tide it up, is to go with Tide against the Wind, and when the Tide alters to lie at Anchor till it forve again.

It flows Tide and half Tide, that is, it will be High-water looner by three hours at the fhore than in the Offing.

To Tow, is to drag any thing after the Ship.

The Traverse, is the Ships way.

87 ous for a Crofs bar Shot to catch hold by, or any rag of he wadding being a fire, and flicking there may fire the next Charge you put in her; and you may find it, if the be Taper- How to find bored, either with a crooked wyer at the end of a long staff, it. by fcratching up and down to fee where you can catch any hold, or a light Candle at the end of a ftaff thrust up and down to fee if you can fee any fault. Britchings are the Britchings. Ropes by which you lafh your Ordnance faft to the Ships-fide in foul weather. Chambers is a Charge made of Brafsor Iron. Chambers. which we use to put in at the britch of a Sling or Murtherer, containing just fo much powder as will drive away the cafe of ftones or thot, or any thing in her. In a great Piece we call that her Chamber, fo far as the Powder doth reach, when the is loaded.

Of Gunnery.

A Cartrage is a Bag of Canvals made upon a frame or Canrage, a round piece of wood fomewhat lefs than the Bore of the Piece, they make them alfo of Paper, they have alfo Cartrages or, rather Cafes for Cartrages made of Lattin to keep the Cartrages in, which is to have no more Powder in them than just the Charge of your Piece, and they are closely co- Cales. vered in thole Cales of Lattin, to keep them dry, and from any mischances by fire, and are far more ready and lafer A Budgthan your Ladles or Budgebarrels. A Budgebarrel is a little barrel Barrel made of Lattin, filled with Powder to carry from place to place for fear of fire sine the cover it hath a long A Ladle. neck to fill the Ladles, withal withour opening. A Ladle is a long flaff, with a piece of thin Copper at the end like half a Cartrage, in breadth and length fo much as will hold no more Powder than the due Charge for the Piece it belongs to. A spunge is fuch another Haff, with a Piece of a A Spange, Lambs skin at the end about it to thruft up and down the Piece, to take off the duft, moisture, or sparks of fire if A Rammer. any remain in her. And a frammer is a bob of wood at the Waddings: other end to ram home the Powder and the Waddings Wat bings is Okum, old Clours, or Straw, put after the Powder and the Bullet. A Cafe is made of two Pieces of hollow Wood cafes, wood joyned together like two half Cartrages fit to put in-

To

te.

## 86

## The Sea mans Grammar.

Capíquates.

Wheels.

Linch-pins.

lie in two half holes upon the two Cheeks of the Carriages, to raile her up or down as you will; over them are the Capfiguares, which are two broad Pieces of Iron, doth cover them, made faft by a Pin with a fore lock to keep the Piece from falling out. That the Piece and Carriages is drawn along upon 19herlsevery one doth know, if the be for Landfervice, they have Wheels made with Spokes like Coachwheels, and according to their proportions ftrongly flod with Iron, and the Pins at the ends of the Axletree are called Linch-pins.

It for Sea she have Trucks, which are round intire Pieces Trucks. To mount a of wood like Wheels. To mount a Piece is to lay her upon Piece. her Cantiages ; to bilmount her, to take her down. Her Beb To difmount a is a Plank doth lie next the Piece, or the Piece upon it upon Piece. the Carriage, and betwixt the Piece and it they put their Beds. Quoines. Quoines, which are great wedges of wood with a little handle at the end to put them forward or backward for levelling the Piece as you pleafe. To Gravas a Riece is to turn her which Travas: way you will upon her Platform. To bifpart a Piece is to find Difpart. Mouth. a difference betwixt the thickness of the metal at her mouth Britch. and britch or carnoule which is the greatest circle about her Carnoulc. Britch, and her muzzle fing is the greatest circle about her Muzzle. mouth, thereby to make a just thos, there are divers ways to dispart her, but the most easiest is as good as the best, and that is but by putting a little flick or a flraw that is flrait into the Touch-hole to the lower part of the Cplinder or Concave, Cylinder. which is the 2Boze of the Piece, and cut it off close by the me-Concave. Bore. tal, and then apply it in the fame manner to the mouth, and it will exactly fhew you the difference, which being fet upon How to difpart the muzzle of the Piece with a little Clay, Pitch, or Wax, it a Piece. will be as the Pin of any Piece is to the fight, level to the Carnouse or Britch of the Piece; otherwise you may give her allowance according to your judgment. Caper boyed, is when a Piece is wider at the mouth than Taper bore.

towards the britch, which is dangerous (if the Bullet go not home) to burft her. Honycomben, is when the is ill caft, or Honycomb. over much worn, the will be rugged within, which is dangerous To Veer, is to let out; as veer more Rope, veer more sheat. The Ship is Walt, that is, wants ballaft. To Weather & Ship, is to go to Windward of her.

The Sea-mans Grammar.

V

To Wind a Ship, is to bring her head about.

How Winds the Ship, that is, upon what point of the Compass does the lie with her head.

To Would, is to bind Ropes about a Mast or the like, to keep on a Fish to strengthen it:

γY

The Ship Yaws, that is, goes in and out, and does not ffeer fteddy:



# GUNNERY.

# BOOK II.

Being an Abstract of the Art of Gunnery, (or Shooting in Great Ordnance and Morter Pieces :) Wherein the Principles of that Art are plainly Taught, both by Arithmetical Calculation, and by Tables ready Calculated. With the Compositions for the making of feveral Fire Works, useful in. War both at Sea and Land.

# CHAP. L

Wherein is declared the Names of all forts of Ordnance, and their Appurtenances, with an Explanation of their proper Terms; and divers Observations concerning Shooting in them.

A Cannon Royal, a Cannon, a Demi-Cannon, a Culbering, The Names of Demi Culvering, a Saker, a Minion, and divers others: Ordnance. A Table of all which; with their Lengths, Weights, Charges, &c. you have in the Chapter following.

To all these belong **Carriages**, whereon Pieces do lie, Carlages. Supported by an Axletree betwixt two Wheels, whereon doth lie the Piece upon her **Crimmions**, which are two Francioss knobs cast with the Piece on each of her fides, which doth

lie.

86

## The Seamans Grammar.

A Table wherein is described the Names of all forts of Ordnance, from the Cannon to the Base; Alfo the Lengths, Breadths, Weights, Diameters, &c. of Powder, Shot, Ladle, &c. belonging to each Peece

Peece.								·
The Names of the feveral Peeces of Ordnance now in	ut the Bord	Weight	Long	The Load	Shots Diameter	Weight of Shot	Length of Ladle	Breadth of Ladle
Use.	patri:	pound wight	parts .	purt:	i o o parts	poun W.	inch 100 Parts	Inch I oo
Cannon.	8.00	8000	12.00	22.50	7. sc	58.00	24.00	14.75
Demi Cannon, Extra.								
Demi Cannon, Ordi.		<u>5600</u>	10.00	17.50	6.16	32.00	22.00	12.00
Culvering, Extraor. dinary	5.50	4800	10. 00 11. 00 13. 00	12.50	5.25	20.00	16.00	10,00
Culvering, Ordinary	5.25	4500	12.00	11. 37	5.00	17.31	15.00	9. 50
Culvering of the leaft fize	5.00	4000	12.00				14.25	
Demi Culvering, Ex- traordinary				p. ,.			13.50	1
Demi-Culvering Or- dinary	4.50	2700	10.00	7. 29	4-25	10.26	12.75	8. 00
Demi. Culvering of the leffer fize	4.25	2000	10.00	6. 2	4.00	9. 00	12.00	8. 00
Saker, Extraordina	4.00	1800	. 9 0		3.75	7. 21	11.00	7. 25
Saker, Ordinary	3.75	1 ( 00	9. 00	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12.50		10.50	
Saker of the least fize	2.50	1400	8. 00	-	713.25			6. 50
Minnion, Large		1000	_		3.00	the second se	9. 00	
Minnion, Ordinary	3.00	750	The second se		2.92	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		5. 00
Faucon	2.7	750			2. 58	·[ <del>·····</del> ]	10	4. 50
Fauconet		400			2.01	1		4. 00
Rabonet	1.50	200	5. 50	0. 7	1.28		4. 25	
Bale		200		in the second se	1. 17	-	4. 00	
								whol

The Sea-mans Grammar.

89

anointed on any thing made of dry wood, will take fire by the heat of the Sun when the Sun fhines hot. There is alfo a Powder, which being laid in like manner upon any thing fubject to burn, will take fire if either any rain or water light upon it; but those inventions are bad on shore, but much worfe at Sea, and are naught becaufe fo dangerous, and not easie to be quenched, and their practice worle, because they may do as much mifchief to a friend as to an enemy, therefore I will leave them as they are.

There are also divers forts of powder, the Serventine is Powder. like dust and weak, and will not keep at Sea but be moist. Serpentine-The common fort is great corned Powder but grofs, and Great orned. only used in great Ordnance. Your fine corned Powder Powder. for hand Guns is in goodness as your Salt-peter is often re- Fine corned fined, and from ten pence a pound to eighteen pence a Powder. Pound.

A Comkin is a round piece of wood put into the Pieces A Tomkin. mouth and covered with Tallow, and a fib, or Fufe, a little A Fid. Okum made like a Nail put in at the Touch hole, and covered with a thin Lead bound above it to keep the Powder dry in the Piece. Shackels are a kind of Rings but not round, made Shackels: like them at the Hatches corners (by which we take them up and lay them down) but bigger, fixed to the midft of the Ports within board, through which we put a Billet to keep fast the Port from flying open in foul weather, which may eafily indanger, if not fink the Ship. To clop og poplon a Biece, is To cloy a to drive a Nail into her Touch-hole, than you cannot give Piece or poyfire. And to unclop her, is to put as much oyl as you can a- To uncloy. bout the Nail to make it glib, and by a train give fire to her by her mouth, and fo blow it out.

Compais Calliners belongs to the Gunner, and is like Compaistwo half Circles that hath a handle and joint like a pair of Callipers. Compasses, but they are blunt at the points to open as you please for to dispart a Piece. A Bozne is his Touch box, Horne. his Drimer is a fmall long piece of Iron, fharp at the fmall Priming Iron, end to pierce the Cartrage through the Touch hole. His Lint flock. Lint foch is a hand fome carved flick, more than half a yard Ν

long,

whole

Gunners Quadrant. Dark Lanrhorn. Mortars. The names of fmall Pieces. and their Implements. Bandiliers. Bullet-bags. Worms. Scowrers. Melting-Ladles. Lead-Molds. Quartered hot.

90

long, with a Cock at the one end to hold fast his Match, and a fharp Pike in the other to flick it fast upon the Deck or Platform upright. The Gunners Quadzant is to level a Piece, or mount her to any random. A bark Lauthorne is as well to be used by any body as he. For aBoztarg, or fuch Chambers as are only used for Triumphs, there is no use for them in the fervice : but for Curriours, Barquebules, Buskets, Ballard muskets, Colibers, Crabuts, Carbing, long Pillols, of thost Pillols, there belong to them Bandiliers, Bullet bags, Wozms, Scowzers, melting-Ladles. Lead, Molds of all forts to caft their fhot. Quarter Bullets is but any Bullet quartered in four or eight parts, and all those are as useful a Shipboard as on shore. For the Soul, Trunk, Bore, Fortification, the diversity of their Metals, and divers other curious Theorems or terms used about great Ord. nance, there are fo many uncertainties as well in her Mounting, Levelling upon her Platform, as also the accidents that may happen in the Powder, the ground, the air, and differences in proportion, I will not undertake to prefcribe any certain Artificial Rule. These proportions following are near the matter, but for your better fatisfaction read Master Dies's Pantometria, Master Smith, or Master Bourn's Art of Gun. nery, or Mafter Robert Norton's Exposition upon Master Dies's Stratiatico's, Nicholas Tartalia, any of those will thew the Theory at large. But to be a good Gunner you must learn it by practice.

## CHAP. II.

#### How a Gunner ought to be Qualified.

SUpposing him to be a Christian fearing and ferving the true God; and living in good repute and effeem among men. He ought (befides this) to be competently experienced in feveral Arts and Sciences; and effectially in these following. I. In

# Of Gunnery.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of the feveral Pieces of Ordnance now in Ufe.

**B** Efore I proceed to the practice of this Art of Gunnery, I shall give you a brief View of the Names of the feveral Peeces of Ordnance now in Use in this Nation, as also of four other Pieces used in Holland, and other parts of the Low-Countries; all which the following Table will express at one view.

## The Table Explained.

The Table confifteth of nine Rows or Columes :

First, Is the Names of all Ordinance now in use.

Second, Is the Diameter at the Bore, in Inches and 100 parts of an Inch.

Third, Is the Weight of the Peece in Pounds.

Fourth, Is the Longth of the Peece in Feet, and 100 parts of a Foot.

Fifth, Is the Quantity of Powder which will Load

In the <sup>4</sup> the Piece, in Pounds and 100 parts of a Pound. Sixth, Is the Diameter of the Shot for the Peece, in Inches and hundred part of an Inch.

Seventh, Is the Shot-weights, in Pounds and hundred parts of a Pound.

Eight, Is the Length of the Spoon of the Ladle in Inches and 100 parts.

Ninth, Is the breadth of the Plate of the Ladle.

Firft, And here note, That in this Table, the Ladle is but 3 Diameters of the Shot in length, and three fifth parts of the Circumference.

Secondly, The Charge of Powder from the Cannon to the whole



A B is the Diameter of the Muzzle, the Concave Cylinder, or Bore of the Piece; and the Molding above that, noted with RS is the Muzzle Ring, or Cornice. C is the Freeze. C D the Neck. EF the Astragal, or Cornice Ring. G H the Reinforced Ring. I K the two Trunnions. L. M the Chamber. N the Bale Ring, and the Touchbole, marked out to fall just with the end of the Bore. O the Cascabel, or Pummel. PL the Vacant Cylinder from the Charge or Chamber, for the

guide of the Shot. M O the Breech.

M N the thickness of Metal at the Breech.

R is the Diffart, which is a piece of a fmall flick or Wyre, fet perpendicularly upon the Muzzle-Ring of any Gun, of fuch length that the top of it may be equal (in height) to the upper part of the Bafe Ring.

CHAP.

1. In Arithmetick both Vulgar and Decimal; whereby he may be able to work the Rule of Three (or Golden Rule) both Direct and Reverse, to Extract the Square and Cube Roots, Oc.

Of Gunnery.

2. In Geometry, whereby he may be able to take Heights, Depths, and Diftances; To take the true Plat of any Piece of Ground; and thereby to Mine or Counter-mine under the fame, or any part thereof.

3. He ought to be Experienced in making of Ramparts, Cannon, Baskets of Earth, and Fire works, both for Service and Recreation.

4. He ought to be acquainted with the Names of every member of which a Piece of Ordnance is composed, and to what use every member is appropriated.

5. He ought to know how to fearch and pry into the conditions of any Gun or Guns committed to his charge: As to know whether traly bored, or taper bored; whether with or without a Chamber; whether free from flaws (or Honey combs.) To know what quantity of Powder will ferve for a due Charge for each Piece, what Shot will fit; how many Matroffes to attend; how many Horfes or Oxen will ferve to draw any Piece, or (in cafe they cannot be had) how many men may ferve.

#### CHAP. III.

Of fuch Neceffary Implements and Inftruments as a Gunner that bath charge of Guns or Artillery ought to be furnished with.

Arriages, Wheels, Axletrees, Ladles, Rammers, Sheepikins. to make Spunges; Gun Powder, Shot; (Plain and Crofs Bar, and also Chain shot), Canvas and Strong Paper to make Cartrages, Fire works, Hand-Spikes, to mount and difmount N 2 Peeces;

Peeces; a Dark Lantborn, and Budg-Barrels to Carry Powder, Stocks, Match, Wedges, Tomkings, Priming-Irons, &c.

Also he ought to be furnished with these necessary Instruments: (1) A Gunner's Height Rule of Wood, or Brass, or Brass-circles, and a Pair or two of Compasses, one Pair with three Points to draw with Black Lead and Ink; and one plain Pair; and also a Pair of Callopirs, to take the Diameter of any Ring or Bullet. (2) A Gunner's Quadrant to level, elevate, or depress his Gun; and Engines to try the strength of Powder,  $\sigma c$ .

#### 8

92

#### CHAP. IV.

Cautions that a Gunner ought to observe before he fire his Gun.

**T** HAT in breaking up the Head of his Powder-Barrels, he use a Wooden Mallet with his Iron Tool, and not a Hammer, for fear of firing.

2. That he give his Gun its due Charge of Powder, and more. And if by trial (before he put in his Charge) he find that his Piece is not truly *bored*, he must then proportion his Charge according to the *thinest* fide of the Metal, as shallbe shewed in due place.

3. He is to confider that a long Wad of Hay or untwifted Ropes, will make the Shor shoot wide of the mark.

4. He ought to fee the Transions are truly feated in the Carriage; whether one Wheel be higher, or reverse faster than the other; whether the Platform be level or not, and also free from Stones or other impediments to hinder the motion of the Wheels.

5. If the Gun he is to difcharge, lie point blank, or under-Meral, he ought to put in a fufficient Wad after the Shot, to keep it close to the Pozuder; for if the shot lie not close, the Peece Peece will be fubject to break in that vacancy. But if his Piece be mounted to any Elevation, he need not put a Wad after the fhot.

Of Gunnery.

## CHAP. V.

Of Gunpowder, and how it hath been made from time to time, and how it is made at this prefent.

A Nno 1 280 Gumpow der was made of Saltpetre, Brimstone, and Charcoal, of each a like quantity.

Anno 1410 it was made of three parts Saltpetre, and two parts of Brimstone and Charcole.

Anno 1480 it was made of Saltpetre eight parts, and of Brimftone and Gharcoal each three parts.

Anno 1520 it was made of Saltpetre four parts, and of Brimftone and Charcoal each one part.

Gunpowder, as it is made in this Age, is compounded of Saltpetre fix parts, and of Brimstone and Charcoal of each one part.

Musket powder is now made of Saltpetre five parts, one part of Brimstone, and one of Coal.

And Cannon powder of four times as much Saltpetre, as of Coal and Brimstone, agreeable to that was made Anno 1520.

A pound of Powder as it is now made, (as it was experimented in five feveral forts of Powder here, little differing from each other, but the large corned Powder was the heavieft) one pound will fill thirty one Cubical Inches, and fix hundred parts of an Inch-

## CHAP. VI.

Of the Names of the several parts or members of a Piece of Ordnance.

LEt this Figure represent the Ichnography of any Great Gun or Piece of Ordnance: In which, A B.

zle Ring of the Piece with Clay, Pitch or Wax, it shall be the true Dispart.

There are other Mechanick ways to perform this Work, but the best of them are uncertain; wherefore I shall fhew how it may be performed other ways.

#### II. By the foregoing Table.

Let the Girt of the Base Ring of a Piece be 42 Inches, and the Girt of the Muzzle Ring 31 Inches; and let the length of the Dilpart for such a Piece be required.

Look in the first Column of the Table for 42 (the Girt of the Base Ring ) and against it (in the next Column) is 1 3. 37. that is 13 Inches and 37 hundred parts of an Inch; for the Diameter of the Bale Ring. Again, look in the first Column of the Table for 21. (the Girt of the Muzzle Ring, and against it (in the next Column) is 9. 87. that is, 9 Inches and 87 hundred parts of an Inch, for the Diameter of the Muzzle Ring as before; the difference between these is, 2.50. which is 3 Inches and a half; the half whereof is, 1.75 (or I Inch and 2 quarters) for the length of the Dipart of fuch a Gun.

#### Another Example :

Let the Girt or Circumference of the Bale Ring of a Gun be 37 Inches, and 4 tenth parts of an Inch : And let the Girt of the Muzzle Ring of the fame Piece be 26 Inches and 6 tenths of an Inch: I would know the length of the Dispart for luch a Gun.

Look in the first Column of this Table for 27 Inches, and among the great figures at the head, for 4 (which is the 4 tenths of an Inch)And then against 37 in the first Colum, and under 4 at the top, you shall find \$1.90, which is 11 Inches. and 90hundred parts of an Inch(or 9 tenths of an Inch) for the Diameter of the Bale Ring of the Piece: Again, look in the Table for 26 Inches in the first Column, and for 6 at the head of the Table, and right against 26 in the first Column, and under 6 at the head, you shall find this number 8.47, which is 8 Inches

# The Sea-mans Grammar.

97

whole Culvering is allowed to be about two Diameters of the Bore of the Piece. The Charge from the Culvering to the Minion, two Diameters and a half. And from the Minion to the Base, three Diameters.

### CHAP. VIII.

How to find the Diameter of any Round Shot or Bullet, by knowing the Circumference : Or, By having the Circumference of a Shot, to find the Diameter.

#### I. Mechanically.

NIT the Shot about with a Tape, or piece of narrow Ribband ; then divide the length of that Line or Girt into 22 equal parts, and 7 of those parts shall be the Diameter: So, if a Shot be 27 Inches about, the Diameter will be found to be 1 r Inches 2 quarters, and fomewhat more:

But if the Diameter were given, and the Circumference were required : Then divide the Diameter into 7 equal parts, and three times the Diameter, and one of the feven parts added to it, shall be equal to the Circumference: These ways are troublefome, wherefore another way to find the Diameter of any · Round Shot, or the Ring of a Gun, is by a pair of Calloper Compasses, which are Compasses bowed at the Points, I need not defcribe them, they are known well enough; but this work may be performed by the following Table for finding the length of a Dispart, and the Diameter or Circumference of any Ring of a Gun or Shot, Oc.

I. The Circumference of any Ring or Bullet, given to find the Diameter.

Find the Circumference of the Ring or Bullet in Inches and tenths of Inches in the first Column and head of the Table, and against the Inches in the first Column, and under the tenths of Ο

98

of an Inch at the head of the Table, you hand the Diameter in Inches, and 100 parts of an Inch.

Exam. Let the Circumference of a Ring or Shot be 23 Inches and 4 tenth parts of an Inch. Look for 23 in the first Column, and against it, under 4 in the head of the Table is 7.45which is 7 Inches, and 45 hundred parts of an Inch, for the Diameter.

#### II. The Diameter given, to find the Circumference.

Look for the length of the Diameter given, among the Figures in the Table, and what number ftands against it in the first Column, for they are the whole Inches in the Circumference; also fee what Figure stands over them, at the head of the Table, for those are the tenths of Inches of the Circumference.

Example. Let the Diameter of a Shot be 7 Inches, and 7 tenths, or 70 hundreds, of an Inch. Look for this number 7.70 in the Table, and against it in the first Column you have 24 Inches, and 2 at the head of the Table; so that the Circumference is 24 Inches and 2 tenth parts of an Inch.

Again, if the Diameter given were 13 Inches 62 hundred parts of an Inch, I look in the Table for 13.62 and I find that 42 flands against it, in the first Column, and 8 over head; wherefore I conclude the Circumference to be 42 Inches, and 8 tenth parts of an Inch.

And this is either the Circumference or Diameter exactly and eafily found by the following Table, for all Rings or Shot whole Circumference do not exceed 54 Inches.

#### III. By Arithmetick.

This being a thing fo neceffary for a Gunner to know, I will shew how it may be done Arithmetically.

The Proportion of the Diameter of any Circle, is to the Circumference thereof (according to Archimedes) as 7 is to 22, and that was the reafon that in the former ways you divided the Circumference into 22 equal parts, and took 7 of them for the Diameter. But fince Archimedes, other numbers have been found nearer the truth, viz. 113 and 355. Wherefore, I. By Look for 13.75 among the Figures in fome of the Columns of the Table, which number you will find to ftand under the figure in the head of the Table, and against 43 in the first Column of the Table, which shews the Circumference of that Circle to be 43 Inches, and two tenth parts of an Inch.

Of Gunnery.

## CHAP. X:

Concerning the Disparting of any Piece of Ordnance, and how to find the length of the Dispart.\_\_\_\_\_

THE Differt of a Piece, is the difference between the thickness of the Metal at the Muzzle and Breech of the Piece: And to find it there are feveral ways.

#### I. Mechanically.

Take your Priming Iron, and put it down right in the Touchhole, till it touch the Metal at the bottom of the Bore, and upon the Iron make a mark level with the top of the Bafe Ring of the Piece: Then apply the Priming-Iron to the bottom of the Metal at the Mouth of the Piece; and upon it make another mark, equal with the top of the Muzzle Ring of the Piece; fo shall the distance between these two Marks, be the true length of the Diffart proper for that Gun.

Another way not much differing from the former may be thus :

Take a finall Stick or Straw that is ftrait, and put it into the Touch hole to the lower part of the Cylinder (or Concave) of the Gun, and cut it off clofe to the Metal at the top of the Baje Ring of the Piece; then apply it in the fame manner to the Mouth of the Piece, and cut it off level with the top of the Muzzle Ring, fo fhall the little piece cut off be the Difpart; which being fet upright upon the top of the Muzzle

## The Description of the Table.

The Table is Calculated from one tenth part of an Inch Circumference, to 54 Inches Circumference, which is large enough for the Girt of the Bale Ring of any Gun : Or for the Circumference of any Bullet or Granado Shell; for which purpoles this Table will be ferviceable, as shall be shewed hereafter.

The Table confifting of Eleven Columns, the first Column of the Table (beginning at 0 Inches, and ending at 53 Inches) shows the number of whole Inches that any Ring of a Piece, or Girs of a Bullet is in Circumference. The nine Figures at the Heads of the Table, which are 0. I. 2. 3, &c. (and are larger than the rest) signific tenth parts of Inches of the Circumference of any Ring or Bullet. And the Figures in the other Columns are the Diameters of Circles, the Girt of whole Circumference are found in the Side and Head thereof.

#### The Use of the Table.

The Uses of this Table are principally two, First, by having the Circumference of any Circle given, to find the Diameter; or, Secondly, having the Diameter, to find the Circumference.

Example 1. If the Circumference of a Circle be 18 Inches, and three tenth parts of an Inch, how much is the Diameter of that Circle ?

Find 18 Inches in the first Column of the Table, and three tenths at the top of the Table; and right against 18, and under 3, you shall find 5.82, that is 5 Inches, and 82 hundred parts of an Inch for the length of the *Diameter* of that Circle.

Example 2. If the Diameter of a Circle be 13 Inches and 75 hundred parts of an Inch, how much a the Circumference of that Circle?

Look

**af Gunnery.** 99 **1.** By the Diameter to find the Circumference:

As 113 is to 355 :: fo is the length of any Diameter (fuppofe 23 Inches 31 hundred parts) to 73.53, that is, 73 Inches, and 53 hundred parts of an Inch, for the Circumference.



2. By the Circumference to find the Diameter. As 355 is to 113 :: So is any Circumference, (fuppole 1625 Inches 25 hundred parts) to 516. 77 fere.

#### The Arithmetical Work.



That is 5 16 Inches, and 77 hundred parts of an Inch (which is a fmall matter above 3 quarters of an Inch) for the Diameter; and according to this Rule is the following Table Calculated. O 2 A

CHAP. IX.	Tenth parts of Inches.
	Inches.   0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9
A TABLE shewing how to find the Diameter of any Circle or Ring	21 6. 61 6. 726. 75 6. 78 6. 81 6. 81 6. 886. 916. 946. 97
of a Gun not exceeding 54 Inches : Of excellent use for the easie and exact finding of the length of the Dispart of any Gun : Ar also of the	22 7. 007. 03 7. 07 7. 10 7. 13 7. 16 7. 19 7. 22 7. 26 7. 29
Diameter of any Shot or Bullet: without Callopers, and also of	23 7. 37 7. 35 7. 38 7. 42 7. 45 7. 48 7. 51 7. 54 7. 58 7. 61 24 7. 64 7. 67 7. 70 7. 73 7. 77 7. 8, 7. 83 7. 86 7. 29 7. 9
Granada-Shells.	$2c[7, 96]7, 99[8, 02]^8, 05]^3, 08[8, 12.8, 15]8, 18[8, 21]8, 22$
	26 8. 28 8. 31 8. 24 8. 37 8. 40 8. 44 8. 47 8. 50 8. 51 8. 50
Tenth Parts of Inches.	<b>2</b> 7 8. 59 8. 63 8. 66 8. 69 8. 72 8. 75 8. 79 8. 81 8. 85 8. 81 <b>3</b> 28 8. 91 8. 94 8. 98 9. 00 9. 04 9. 07 9. 10 9. 13 9. 17 9. 20
	$\begin{array}{c} 3 & 28 & 3 & 910 & 940 & 980 & 300 & 910 & 910 & 940 & 920 & 910 & \mathbf$
Inches. 0 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	5 20 9. 55 9. 589. 61 9. 65 9. 68 9. 71.9. 74 9. 77 9. 80 9. 8
2 0 0. 00 0. 03 0. 06 0. 09 0. 13 0. 16 0. 19 0. 22 0. 25 0. 29 2 1 0. 32 0. 35 0. 38 0. 41 0. 44 0. 48 0. 51 0. 54 0. 57 0. 60	$\underline{\exists} 31 9.879.909.939.9610.0010.0310.0610.0910.1210.1$
$\begin{array}{c} \underbrace{32}{9} \\ \underbrace{9}{9} \\ \underbrace{1}{9} $	$\frac{10}{33} \frac{32}{10.51} \frac{10.22}{10.54} \frac{10.25}{10.57} \frac{10.29}{10.60} \frac{10.31}{10.34} \frac{10.34}{10.38} \frac{10.41}{10.44} \frac{10.44}{10.47} \frac{10.44}{10.76} \frac{10.76}{10.76} 10.$
	24 10.82 10.05 10.09 10.92 10.95 11.98 11.01 11.04 11.08 11.1
$ \begin{array}{c} \mathbf{E} & 4 & \mathbf{I} \cdot 27 \mathbf{I} \cdot 30 \mathbf{I} \cdot 34 \mathbf{I} \cdot 37 \mathbf{I} \cdot 40 \mathbf{I} \cdot 43 \mathbf{I} \cdot 46 \mathbf{I} \cdot 50 \mathbf{I} \cdot 53 \mathbf{I} \cdot 56 \\ 5 & 5 & \mathbf{I} \cdot 59 \mathbf{I} \cdot 62 \mathbf{I} \cdot 65 \mathbf{I} \cdot 68 \mathbf{I} \cdot 72 \mathbf{I} \cdot 75 \mathbf{I} \cdot 78 \mathbf{I} \cdot 81 \mathbf{I} \cdot 85 \mathbf{I} \cdot 88 \\ \hline 6 & 6 & \mathbf{I} \cdot 91 \mathbf{I} \cdot 94 \mathbf{I} \cdot 97 2 \cdot 00 2 \cdot 03 2 \cdot 07 2 \cdot 10 2 \cdot 13 2 \cdot 16 2 \cdot 19 \\ \hline 7 & 2 \cdot 23 2 \cdot 26 2 \cdot 29 2 \cdot 32 2 \cdot 36 2 \cdot 39 1 \cdot 42 1 \cdot 75 \mathbf{I} \cdot 75 1 \cdot 75 $	
$\frac{3}{3} \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{1.91} \frac{9}{1.94} \frac{1}{1.97} \frac{9}{2.00} \frac{2}{2.03} \frac{2}{2.07} \frac{9}{2.10} \frac{1}{2.10} \frac{9}{2.10} \frac{1}{2.10} \frac{9}{2.10} \frac{1}{2.10} \frac{1}$	$ \begin{array}{c} & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & $
7 2. 232. 262. 292. 32 2. 362. 39 2. 42 2. 45 2. 482. 51	2 38 12.10 12.1 2 12.16 12.19 12.22 12.25 12.28 12.22 12.35 12.2
0/2. 0/2. 0/2. 0/2. 0/2. 0/2. 0/2. 0/2.	6 39 12.41 12.45 12.48 12.51 12.54 12.57 12.60 12.64 12.67 12.7
$ \begin{array}{c} \underline{G} \\ \underline$	$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
<u><u><u>P</u></u> <u>II</u> <u>[3. 50]</u> <u>53</u> <u>3. 56]</u> <u>60]</u> <u>60]</u> <u>63</u> <u>3. 69</u> <u>3. 72</u> <u>3. 75</u> <u>3. 79</u></u>	42 13.37 13.40 13.43 13.46 13.50 13.53 13.56 13.59 13.62 13.6
I2  3· 82 3· 85 3· 91 3· 95 3· 95 3· 91 3· 95 3· 95 4· 01 4· 04 4· 07 4· 11	43 13.69 13.72 13.75 13.78 13.85 13.85 13.88 13.91 13.94 13.9
$\begin{array}{c} 3 & 13 \\ 3 & 14 \\ \hline 14 \\ \hline 4 & 46 \\ \hline 4 & 49 \\ \hline 4 & 52 \\ \hline 4 & 55 \\ \hline 4 & 58 \\ \hline 4 & 62 \\ \hline 4 & 65 \\ \hline 4 & 68 \\ \hline 4 & 71 \\ \hline 4 & 74 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} 3 & 40 \\ \hline 12.73 \\ \hline 12.76 \\ \hline 12.79 \\ \hline 12.79 \\ \hline 12.79 \\ \hline 12.79 \\ \hline 12.90 \\ $
5 IS 4. 77 4. 80 4. 83 4. 87 4. 90 4. 93 4. 97 5. 00 5. 03 5. 06	2 46 14.64 14.67 14.70 14.74 14.76 14.80 14.83 14.86 14.90 14.9
$ \begin{array}{c} 5 & 15 & 4 \cdot 77 & 4 \cdot 80 & 4 \cdot 83 & 4 \cdot 87 & 4 \cdot 90 & 4 \cdot 93 & 4 \cdot 97 & 5 \cdot 03 & 5 \cdot 03 & 5 \cdot 06 \\ \hline 16 & 5 \cdot 09 & 5 \cdot 12 & 5 \cdot 16 & 5 \cdot 19 & 5 \cdot 22 & 5 \cdot 25 & 5 \cdot 28 & 5 \cdot 31 & 5 \cdot 34 & 5 \cdot 37 \\ \hline 17 & 5 \cdot 41 & 5 \cdot 44 & 5 \cdot 47 & 5 \cdot 51 & 5 \cdot 64 & 5 \cdot 67 & 5 \cdot 60 & 5 \cdot 63 & 5 \cdot 67 & 5 \cdot 70 \\ \hline 18 & 5 \cdot 73 & 5 \cdot 76 & 5 \cdot 79 & 5 \cdot 82 & 5 \cdot 86 & 5 \cdot 8 & 5 \cdot 92 & 5 \cdot 95 & 5 \cdot 98 & 6 \cdot 01 \\ \end{array} $	4/
$\frac{3}{18} \frac{17}{5.41} \frac{5.44}{5.73} \frac{5.47}{5.795} \frac{5.64}{5.6} \frac{5.6}{5.60} \frac{5.63}{5.63} \frac{5.63}{5.70}$	48 15.28 15.31 15.34 15.37 15.40 5.44 15.77 15.50 15.53 15.53 49 15.60 15.62 15.66 15.69 15.72 15.76 15.79 15.82 15.85 15.8
<u>19</u> 19 5. 05 6. 08 6. 11 6. 14 6. 17 6. 21 5. 24 6. 27 6. 30 6. 33	50 16.92 15.95 15.98 16.01 16.04 16.07 16.11 16.14 16.17 16.2
E 20 6. 37 6. 35 3. 43 6. 46 6. 49 6. 52 6. 58 6. 59 6. 62 6. 65	51 16.24 16.27 16.20 16.32 16.36 16.40 16.43 16.40 16.49 16.5
Tenth	52 16.55 16.58 16.62 16.63 16.71 16.74 16.77 16.81 16.8 53 16.87 16.90 16.93 16.57 16.99 17.03 17.06 17.69 17.12 17.1
•	Juli 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.

Of Gunnery.

.

100

# The Sea-mans Grammar.

The

101

	Whole	Inches in	Liamcter.	
13	15543	9 12	H 4.W4 ~ 0 100	
17 687.82 700.02 712.37 724.71 737.02 750.31 76 18 816.48 830.16 843.50 857.99 872.13 886.43 90 19 960.25 975.50 990.91 1000.31 1002.22 1039.00 105 20 1120.00 [135.19] 1153.90 1170.92 1188.51 1202.41 122	307.58 384.16 472.50 573.43	102.06 140.00 186.34 241.92	0.14 1.12 3.78 8.96 17.50 30.27 48.02 71.68	0
687.82 700.02 712.37 724.71 737.02 750.31 763.24 576.27 789.56 bc.2.9. 816.48 830.16 843.50 857.99 872.13 886.43 900.38 915.40 930.26 945.18 960.25 975.50 990.91 1000.31 1002.22 1039.00 1054.12 1075.32 1080.71 1123.33 1120.00 1136.19 1153.90 1170.92 1188.51 1202.41 122 .81 1241.81 1259 82 1278.1	314.73 392.45 482.01 584.26	105.50 144.24 191.47 248.02	0.19 1.30 4.17 9.65 9.65 31.78 31.78 31.78 74.40	-
712.37 843.50 990.91 1153.90	322.00 400.86 491.56 595.21		0.27 1.49 4.59 10.37 19.69 32.37 52.26 52.26	N
724-71 857-99 1000-31 1170-92	329•37 409.39 501.42 606.29	112.61 152.98 202.5 <b>1</b> 260.52	0.31 1.70 5.27 11.11 20.84 35.01 54.46 80.04	The Ten
737.02 872.13 1002.22 1 188.51	336.86 418.04 511.32 617.54	116.39 157.48 207.43 266.93	0.38 1.93 5.5c 11.93 22.05 36.70 56.73 . 82.97	The Tenths of Inches
750.31 886.43 1039.00 1202.41		120.03 162.06 212.92 273.43	0.47 1.18 6.00 12.76 23.30 38.45 59.07 85.98	s
763.24 900.38 1054.12 122 .81	351.80 436.0 531.50 6.0.10	122:90 166:74 218:52 280:04	9.57 2.46 6.53 1.3.63 2.4.59 40.25 61.46 89.05	9
.24 576:27 789:56 bc2.9 .38 915.40 930.26 945.1 .12 1075:32 1080:71 1103.3 .81 1241.81 1259 8: 1278.1	259,99 444 72 541.78 6;2.04	127.78 171.51 224.22 286.78	0:69 2.76 7.09 14:54 25.93 4.:11 63.92 92.18	7
789:56 930.26 1080:71 1259 8:		131.77 176.35 230.02 293.58	0.82 3.07 7.68 15.48 27.32 44.02 66.45 95.01	8
945.18 945.18 1103.33	575.99 463.11 562.36 67 .74	135.84 181.30 255.92 201.2	9 5.65 9 5.65 9 5.65	6

Of Gunnery.

unnery.

105

Inches 47 hundred parts of an Inch: Substract 8.  $\frac{47 \text{ icom}}{11.90}$ , the remainder will be 2.57, the half whereof is 1.28, that is 1 Inch, and 28 hundred parts of an Inch, for the true length of the *Difpart* of that Gun.

A Third Example :

Girt of the Bafe Ring, 47 Inch. 3 tenths \_\_\_\_\_\_ 15. 06 Girt of the Muzzle Ring 32 Inch. 5 tenths \_\_\_\_\_\_ 15. 04 Their Difference 4. 72

The half 2 In. 36 hund. parts of an Inch, the Differt 2. 36

And let this fuffice for the use of this Table in this place.

All these ways here prescribed for Disparting of a Piece, do fuppose the Piece to be truly bored; but if it be Chamber bored, observe what followeth.

#### How to know whether a Piece be Chamber bored, or not.

First, find the Dispart of the Piece, by the Priming-Iron or a Stick, also find it by the Table; and if you find them two ways to agree, take that for the true Dispart. Take the Dispart by the third way, but if the Dispart taken by the several ways differ, then that difference is the just difference of the Chamber from the true Bore of the Piece.

#### As for Example :

Suppose the Dispart found by the Priming Iron to be two Inches, and by the Table 3 Inches; it shews that the Chamber differs from the true Bore, on each fide one Inch; fo that if the Bore of the Piece be fix Inches high, the Chamber is but 4 Inches high.

This the Gunner ought to examine and enquire into, that he may make his Cartridges to load his Piece withal accordingly.

Р

СНАР.

#### CHAP. XI.

How to know whether a Piece of Ordnance be truly bored or not, when it is in its Carriage: and lying Horizontally.

DRovide a Pike faff, which let be about one foot longer than the Bore of the Piece from the Touch hole; and at the ond thereof, fasten a Rammer head, that will justly fill all the Bore under the Touch-hole; and at the other end of the Staff, bore a hole big enough to put through a Rod of Iron about 16 or 18 Inches long, and at the end of the Rod hang a Bullet or Weight of about 7 or 8 pound; for this Weight thus disposed will cause the same part of the Rammer head to lye always with the fame part uppermoft. Put this Instrument thus prepared into the Piece, letting the bon Rod and Bullet hang perpendicularly; then putting your Priming-Iron in at the Touch hole, make a mark upon the Rammerbead : This done, draw your Infrument out of the Gun, and lay it upon a long Form or Tuble, letting the Rod and Bullet hang over the end of the Table as it did before out of the mouth of the Piece. Then observe, whether the mark you made upon the head of the Rammer when it was in the Piece, be just on the uppermoft part of the fame when it lyeth upon the Table ; and if it be, the Bore of the Piece lyeth neither to the right or left hand : But if you find it to lie half or a quarter of an Inch either to the right or left hand, fo much lyeth the Bore either to the right or left, and the Piece in shooting must be ordered and charged accordingly.

By what is here faid, may be found whether the Piece incline towards the Right or Left hand, but to know whether it lie also upwards or downwards, and not in the middle: Then, The Cube of  $\varsigma$  Inches is 125, which multiplied by 14, produceth 1750, from which cut off the two figures towards the right hand, and it will be 17.50, that is 17 pound, and  $\varsigma_0$  hundred parts of a pound, which is just 17 pound and a half; and that is the weight required.

Of Gunnery.

And this way (as he found it by often experience) comes nearer to the truth than the former, of 9 Pound to 4 Inches Diameter.

Example 2. Let the Diameter of a Shot be 6 Inches and seven

Tenths of an Incb; and let the Weight thereof be required. Multiply 6.7 by 6.7, the Product will be 44.89 for the Square, and that multiplied again by 6.7 produceth 300.863 for the Cube of the Diameter of the Shot. Which 300.863 multiplied by 14, produceth 4212082, from which five figures to the right hand being cut off (that is three for the Decimal parts in the Multiplicand 300.863, and two, according as the Ruke directs) the Remainder will be 42.12082, that is 42 Pound, and 12 hundred parts of a Pound for the Weight of the Shot whole Diameter is 6 Inches and 7 tenths of an Inch.

According to this Rule is the following Table made, which fheweth the weight of any *Iron Shot*, whole Diameter is given in Inches and Tenth parts of Inches; from one Inch to 20 Inches Diameter: in Pounds and 100 parts of a Pound weight.

#### The Use of the following Table.

EXample 1. Let the Diameter of an Iron-shot be 13 Inches, what is its weight ?

Look for 13 in the first Column of the Table towards the left hand, and against it in the next Column stands 307.58, which shews that such a Shot of Iron will weigh 307 Pound, and 58 hundred parts of a Pound, which is above half a Pound.

Exam. 2. If a Cast-Bullet of Iron be in Diameter 11 Inches and 3 Tenths of an Inch, How much doth that Bullet weigh? Look

combs, or fuch like Flaws: But if at any stroke you hear a clear bund, you may conclude that Piece to be found, and free from Cracks, &cc.

## CHAP. XIV.

Concerning the Weight of Iron-shot, and Granado-shels.

#### Having the Diameter of any Caft Iron shot, you may find the Weight thereof.

**F**OR, it hath been generally agreed upon, that a Cast Iron-Bullet of 4 Inches Diameter will weigh 9 Pound, and fo make that a proportion for all other Diameters: If fo, then

As the Cube of 4 Inches, which is 64.

So is the Cube of any other Diameter, Suppose 5 Inches (viz. 125.)

To 17.58 pound for the weight,

Which is 17 pound and a half and fomewhat more.

Another way to perform the same somewhat easier.

This way is done by Multiplication only, and fo fomewhat eafier than the former, and it is a way which was difcovered by Mr. Valentine Pyne, late Fire-Mafter of England; and for the effecting of it, this is the RULE:

- Cube the Diameter of the Bullet given, then Multiply that Cube number by 14, and cut off two Figures to the right hand, the Figures to the left hand are pounds weight, and the other two hundred parts of a Pound.
- Example I. Let it be required to find the Weight of a Cast Iron Bullet, whose Diameter is five Inches, the same as in the other Example. The

to find which way; Take the Diameter of the Piece at the Touch-bole, as is before taught : Then take a piece of Wyre, and bend it a little at the end that it may catch at the Mettal when it is drawing out at the Touch hole. This Wyre thus prepared, put it in at the Touch-hole, till it touch the bottom of the Metal in the Chamber, and holding it there make a mark upon it, just even with the Touch hole; then pull up the Wyre till it catch at the Metal on the top of the Chamber. and make another mark upon it, the diftance between thefe two marks, is the just Diameter of the Chamber: And the distance between the first mark, and the end of the Wyre (half the Diameter of the Chamber of the Piece being fubftracted) will leave half the Diameter of the Piece, if the Piece be truly Bored: But if this number be more than half the Diameter of the Piece, before found, at the Touch hole: than the Bore lyeth too far from the Touch-hole, and the upper part of the Metal is the thickest : but if lesser, then the under part of the Piece hath the molt Metal.

Of Gunnery,

Example: Suppose I find the Diameter of my Gun to be at the Touch hole 12 Inches; then with my Wyre, I find the Diameter of the Bore to be 4 Inches; and to the bottom of the Metal it is 7 Inches and an half; now half the Diameter of the Bore being 2 Inches, that added to the second mark upon the Wyre, or substracted from 7 Inches and a half, the first Mark, leaves  $\varsigma$  Inches and a half, which is less than half the Diameter of the Gun at the Touch-hole first found, by half an Inch; and therefore the greatest part of the Metal is under the Bore of the Piece, and the Gun likeliest to break above.

And here note: If you were to make a Dipart for fuch a Gun as this, you are to make it half an Inch shorter then it will be found to be by taking the Circumference, and finding the Diameters of the Rings at the Bale and Muzzle : And the like is to be observed if the difference were greater, or the upper part of the Metal had been greater.

P 2

СНАР.

Is to 9 pound weight:

## CHAP. XII.

Concerning Guns that are not truly bored ; How to know what quantity of Powder must be allowed for their Loading.

CUppole the Diameter of the Metal of a Piece at the Touch-D hole, be 16 Inches, and the Diameter at the Bore 5 Inches and a quarter, the Weight of the Piece 4850 pound : Now fuch a Piece will require II pound of Powder for its Loading: But I find the Bore to be an Inch out of its place, thence I conclude the thinest part of the Metal is 4 Inches and half a quarter, and the thickeft fide 6 Inches and half a quarter, by which it appears, that one fide is two Inches thicker than the other.

Now to find what quantity of Powder will be a fufficient Load for fuch a Piece, it must be computed from the thinest part of the Metal, which is here 4. 375 Inches, which doubled is 8.75 Inches, to which add the Diameter at the Bore 5.25 Inches, the fum is 14.00 Inches, which call the leffer Diameter, and 16 the greater Diameter: And to find the quantity of Powder by Arithmetick, this is the Proportion:

As the Cube of 16 (the greater Diameter) 4096, Is to the Cube of 14 (the leffer Diameter) 2744 ;

So is 11 pound (the Powder to be allowed if the Piece had been truly Bored)

To 7.36 pound (the Powder to be allowed to the falfe Bored Piece. )

For, multiply 16 by 16, it produceth 256, and that again by 16, and it produceth 4096, which is the Cube of 16 the Greater Diameter.

Alfo, multiply 14 by 14, it produceth 196, and that again

by 14, produceth 2744, which is the Cube of 14, the Leffer Diameter.

Of Gunnery. .

109

Then Multiply 2744 (the Cube of the Leffer Diameter) by 11 (the Powder to be allowed, if the Piece had been truly bored) the product will be 30184: which number divided by 4096 (the Cube of the Greater Diameter) gives in the Quotient 7. 36 pounds of Rowder, which will be a fufficient Charge for fuch a falle bored Gun.

## CHAP. XIII.

## How to discover what Cracks, Flaws, or Honeycombs are in any Piece of Ordnance.

A S foon as ever you have difcharged any Piece of Ord-nance, let one be ready to cover the Mouth of the Piece clofe, and ftop the Touch-hole at the fame time; by which means you may know if any Cracks or Flaws do go through the Metal, for if any fuch be, a visible smoke will come through those Elaws or Cracks.

Otherwife: In a clear Sun fhine day, with a piece of polifhed Steel (or plain Looking-Glass) reflect the Beams of the Sun into the hollow Cylinder of the Piece, fo shall you have a clear shining light within the concave of the Piece, by which you may fee all Flaws, Cracks, or Honeycombs.

And in cafe the Sun do not shine, get a Stick fomewhat longer than the hollow of the Piece, and cut a notch at one end thereof, wherein to put a piece of a Candle; put this Stick with the Candle lighted into the Piece, by whole light observe (as well as you can) whether from one end to the other you can discover any Flaws, &c. in the Piece.

Laftly, If upon the outfide of the Metal of any Piece of Ordnance, you strike a fmart blow with an Iron Hammer; If you then hear a hoarfe found, doubtlefs there are Honeycombs,

- As 7. 31 Pound (the weight of the Shot of 3 Inch. 2 Quar.) Is to 52.73 (the Cube of 2 Inch. 3 Quarters:
- So is 16 Pound (the Weight of the Shot whole Diameter is fought.)

To 115, Which Number being found in the fecond Column of the Table (or the nearest to it, which is 107. 17) the Root answering to this Number is 4 Inches 2 Quarters, for the Diameter of the Shot, whole Weight is 16 Pound.

Quest.III. If a Saker whose greatest thickness is II Inches and a balf, do weigh 1900 Pound : What will the Weight of another Saker be, whole greatest thickness is eight Inches and three Quarters.

By the Table I find the Cube of 8 Inches 2 Quarters to be

- 669. 92, and the Cube of 11 Inches and a half to be 1520.85: Then fay by Proportion :
- As 1520.85 (the Cube of the Diameter of the Piece whofe Weight is known)

Is to 1900, (the Weight of the Piece:)

So is 669, 92 (the Cube of the Diameter of the Piece whole Weight you would know),

To 817 Pound almost.

Multiply 669. 92 (the Cube of 8 Inch. 3 2.) by 1900 (the Weight) the Product will be 1272848.00) which divided by 1520.85, the Cube of 11 Inch 2 Qu) the Quotient will be 837 Pound almost, for the Weight of the Piece (or Saker) whose greatest thickness is 8 Inch. 2 Quar.

- This is, if the two Pieces were of the fame Metal, (as both Brass:) But if the Piece whole Weight you feek had been Iron: then having performed all the former work, as if they had been both Brafs; you must then work another Proportion: For, the Proportion of the Weight between Brass and Iron being as 16 to 18 (as I have shewed in the following Chapter XVL of this Book) Brass being the heavier: Then fay. As 18 (the Weight of Bra(s)

Is to 16 (the Weight of Iron),

So is 827 (the Weight of the Piece if it had been Brass),

To 744 (the Weight thereof, it being of how.

Look for 11 Inches in the first Column of the Table, and for 2 Tenths at the top of the Table, and right against 11. and under 2, you shall find 202.51, which is 202 Pound and an half: Inch. Pound And fo a Bullet 9. 6 The Weight thereof will 123. p6 being in Dia-213. 4 be found to be 336. 85 meter 17. 2

## Some other Uses of this Table.

HE Table is Calculated for 20 Inches Diameter of a 1 Shot, or Bullet, but we have no Guns that carries a Bullet above 8 Inches, notwithstanding which, it was Calculated to 20 Inches, for finding the weight of Granado-Shells, which are also made of Caft-Iron ; and the Diameter of those may from Out to Out be near 20 Inches, and therefore I shall instance in one of them.

Exam. 3. Let there be a Granado-Shell whofe Diameter from

Out to Out, let be 19 Inches 6 Tenths; and the Diameter within 15 Inches and 4 Tenths: What is the Weight of that Shell?

Look for 19 Inches in the first Column, and for 6 in the head of the Table, fo against 19, and under 6 you shall find 1054. 1, Pound, which is the weight if it were a folid Shot; which number fet down.

Then look in the first Column of the 1054.40 Table for 15 Inches in the first Column, 511: 22 and 4 in the head of the Table, and against 15 and under 4, you shall find 543.08 511. 32 Pound, which is the weight of

a Shot of 15 Inches and 4 Tenths Diameter. Now if you fubstract 511. 32 (the weight found by the Inner Diameter) from 1054.40 (the Weight found by the Outer Diameter) the Remainder will be 543.08 which is 543 Pound, for the Weight of the Shell.

The Diameter of the Shell without, may be found by its Circumference, as is before taught ; or by a pair of Calloper Compalles :

120

Of Gunnery. 113

\$712. 37

paffes: And for the Diameter within that may be found by putting in a Stick at the Fuse-bole, and measuring it by a Rule of Inches and Tenths: Or, (if the Shell be of equal thickness) by the thickness of the Metal at the Fuse-bole, which suppose to be 2 Inches and I Tenth; the double whereof

19. 6, the Outer Diameter, leaves 15. 4 for the	19.6 4.2
Inner Diameter.	
	15.4

CHAP. XV.

## Concerning the following Table of Cube-Roots. .

**T** H E following Table confifteth of two Columns, in the first of which towards the left hand is contained the *Roots* of all Numbers from 1 to 100, and of their *Halves* and *Quarters*.

So in the beginning of the Table, in the first Column you have 1.0, that is, one Inch, one Fathom, one Pound, &c. and under 1. 0, you have 1, 2, 3, standing one under another, which is 1, 2, 3 Quarters of Inches, Fathoms, &c. and fo on, from one Inch to 100.

In the fecond Column is the Cubes of all those Numbers which ftand in the first Column: As against 2 in the first Column you shall find 8 in the fecond, which is the Cube of 2; for 2 multiplied by 2, produceth 4, and 4 multiplied againby 2 produceth 8, which is the Cube of 2. Also against 2 and 1 quarter, you shall find 11. 39 which is the Cube of 2 and a quarter: And thus may you find that:

Inch	n.Quar. Cube.
<b>Č</b> 4	°) (64
The Cube of	1 ( is ) 144. 90 2 ( is ) 274. 62
<b>V</b> 7	3 <b>4</b> 65. 48

In like manner, if the Cube of any Number be given, the Root thereof may be found. So

AC	$\boldsymbol{c}$	•
Of	Gunner	<b>!</b> •·

119

Root	Cube.	Root	Cube.	[]	Root	Cure.	1
76 0	438976.	850	614125.		94 0	830584.	[
ľ	443322.26		619559.70		74 0	837228.64	
	447697.12		625026.17			843908.62	
	452100.67		620525.11		-	850624.04	
77 0	456533.	86 0	636056.		95 0	857375.	•
1	460994.20		641619.14		·) -	864161.58	
	465484.37		647214.62			870983.87	
	470003.61		652842.54			877841.98	
78 0	474522.	87 0	658503.		96 0	884736.	
	479129.64		664196.07		-	891666.01	
	483736.62		669921.87			898632.12	
	488373.04		675680.48			9=5634.42	
79 o	493039.	88 o	681472.		97 0	915672.	
	497734.58		687296.51			919747.95	
	502459.87		693154.12			926859.37	
	507214.98		<u>699044-92</u>			934007.36	
80 0	\$12000.	89 0	705669.		98 0	941192.	
	516815.01		710926.45			948413.39	l
	521660.12		716917.37			955671.62	
	526535.95	<u> </u>	722941.86			962966.79	r
0 18	531441.	90 0	729000.	1	99 O	970299	ľ
	536376.95		735091.89			97668.33	
	541343.37		741217.62			985074.87	
	546340.36		747377.29			<u>99\$518.73</u>	
82 0	550408.	91 0	753571.		100	100 <b>080</b> 0.	
	556426.39		759798.82				
	561515.62		766060.87	į .	-	I	•
	<u>568357.97</u>		772357.23	1			
830	571787.	92.0	778688.				
	576969.33		785053.26				
	582182.87		791453.12		1		•
	587427.73		797887.67				
84 0	592604.	93 0	804357.			1	
	598011.76		810861.20				
· ·	603351.12		817400.37			\ · {	
	608722.17	1 /	82297461				

118

# The Sea-mans Grammar.

Root	Cube	Root	Cube	Root	Cube
49 0	117649.	58 0	195:12.	67 0	300753.
	119458.95		197645.89		304142.33
	121287.37		200201.62		307546.87
	123134.35		202779.29		310976.73
50 0	125000.	59 0	205379.	68 0	314432.
	I 26884.39		208008.28		317912.76
1	128787.62	1	210644.87		321419.12
	130709.80		213311.23		324951.17
51 0	132691.	60 0	216000.	69 0	329199.
	134611.33		218711.26		332092.70
	136590.87		22144.13		335702.37
	1:8589.73		224201.67	·	3393 38.11
52 0		61 0		70 0	343000.
	142645.65		229782.20		346688.14
1	144703.12		232608.37		350402.62
	146780.17		235454.61		354143.54
53 0		62 0		71 0	J 11/
1	I 50 <i>993.7</i> 0		241222.64		361705.08
	153130.37		244142.52	.	365525.87
	155287.11		247082.04		369373.48
54 0	- J/ - T· ····	63 0	250047.	720	121221
	159661.14		253035.57		377149.51
	161878.62		256047.87 259083.98		381078.12
	164116.54		and the second s		385033.92
55 Q	167375.	64 0		73 °	
	168654.08		265228.01 26833 <b>6.</b> 12		393027.45
	170953.88		271468.42		397065.37 401120.86
1	173274.48	41.0	27+625.		
56 0	175616.	65 0	27 10 23.	7+ 0	405224.
l	177978.51		281011.37		4093 44.89
	180362.12 182756.92		281241.35		413493.62 +17679.30
	185193.	60 0	the second se	750	
57 0	187640.45	66 0	287496. 290775.39	100	426107.83
1 ·	190109.37	1.	294079.63		430368.87
	192599.85		297 108.79		1 4658.23
· · · ·			- // +- 0.1 //		

So if 32768 were a Cube number given, and the Root there of were required:

Of Gunnery.

Look in the fecond Column of the Table (which hath the word Cube at the head thereof) for this Number 32768, againft which you fhall find (under the word Root) 32, which is the Root thereof, for 32 multiplied by 32 produceth 1024, and that again multiplied by 32 produceth 32768, which is the Cube of 32. And thus may you find that,



The Use of the following Table of Cube-Roots, in the folution of several Questions, useful in the Art of Gunnery.

Queft. I. If a Bullet of Iron of fix Inches Diameter weigh thirty Pound, what shall a Bullet of the same Metal weigh, whose Diameter is seven Inches.

Look in the Table for 6 in the first Column, against which you shall find 216, the Cube of 6: Also against 7 is 343 the Cube of 7. Then fay by the Rule of Three:

As 16 (the Cube of 6 Inches.)

Is to 20 Pound, (the Weight of that Bullet):

So is 343 (the Cube of 7 Inches):

To 47.64 (that is 47 Pound, and 64 hundred parts of a Pound) for the Weight of the Bullet of Iron, which is 7 Inches Diameter.

Multiply 343 by 30, the Product will be 10290, which divide by 216, the Quotient will be 47.64 the Weight of the Shot required.

Quelt. II. If the Diameter of a Shot be 3 Inches and 3 Quarters, and it do weigh 7 Pound 5 Ounces, (or in Decimals 7. 31) what will the Diameter of a Shot (of the fame Metal) be whofe Weight is 16 Pound?

The Cube of 3 Inches 3 Quarters is 52.73, then by Proportion lay, Q 2 As

116

# The Sea-mans Grammer.

The Table of Cubes, and Cube-Roots to whole Inches, Halves and Quarters; or of any other Measure.

Root.		Root.		Root.	Cubes.
C O	1,	8 0	512.	150	3375.
1	1. 95	I	561. 52	· 1.	
2	3. 37	. 2	614. 12	2	3723. 87
3	5. 36	3	669. 92	3	3906.98
2 0	8	9 0	729.	16 0	4096.
I	11. 39	I	791. 45	I	4291. 02
	1.5. 62	2,	857. 37	2	4492. 121
3		. 2	926.86	3	4699. 42
<u>3</u> 0	1 '	10 0	1000.	17 0	4913.
. 1	1 2 2 2 2 2	I	1076.89	I	5132.95.
3	1. 1	2.	1157. 62	2	5359. 37
3		3	1242. 30	2	5592. 36
4- o	64.	II O	1331:	18 0	5832.
- <b>I</b>		I	1423. 83	I	6078. 39
2	91. 12	2	1520. 87	2	6331. 62.
3	107.17	3	1622. 23	_ 2	6591. 80
5 0	125.	12 0	1728	19 0	6859.
I	144. 70	I	1838. 26	I	7133. 33
2	167. 37	2	1953. 12	2	7414.87
3	190. II	3	2072. 67	3	7703. 72
5.0	216.	130	2197.	20 0	8000.
1.	244. 14.	1	2326. 20	I	8303.76
2	274. 62	2	2460. 37	2.	8615. 12
3.	307 55	+ 3	2599.60	. 3	8974. 17
. 0	343.		2744-	21 0	9261.
1	381. 07	<b>r</b>	2893. 64	II	9595. 70
2	411. 87	2	3027. 52	2	9938. 37
3	465. 48	1 31	3290. 46	1 3 I	10289. 11
•	•				Roo

# Of Gunnery.

Root.			Root.	Cube		Koot	
22 0	10648.		310			40 0	64000.
I	11015. 14		I۶	30517. 58	{	I	65e07. 51
2	11390. 62	ł	2	31255. 87		2	66430. 12
_3	11774-52		3	32005. 98		3	67667. 93
23 0	12167.		320	32768.		41 0	68921.
Ĭ.	12568. 08		1,	33542. 01		I	70189.45
2,	12977. 87		2	34328. 12		2	71473. 37
3	13396. 48		- 3	35126. 43		_3	72772. 86
24 0	13824.		330	35937.		42 0	74088.
L			I	3.6759.95		I	75418. 90
2	14705. 12		2	37595-37		2	76765. 62
2	15160. 92	1 -	3	28443. 26		3	78128. 30
250	19629.		34 0	39304.		43 0	79507.
Ĭ,	16098.45		I	40177. 19	_		180901. 83
2.	16581. 37		2	41063. 63		2	82881. 86
	17073. 86		3	41962. 80		3	83740. 23
26 0	17576.		350	42825.		44 0	85185
I.	18087.89	Į.	I	43800. 33		1	86644. 26
2			2	44738.87		2	88121. 12
3	19141. 30	-	3	41690. 73		3	89614. 67
<b>2</b> 7 o	19683.		36 0	48656.		44 0	91125.
I	. 20234. 83		I	47.634. 76		1	
. 2			2	48627. 12		2	94196. 37
	21369. 23		3	49633. 17		3	95757. 61
<b>28</b> o	21972.		37 0	50653.		45 0	97336.
L	21.545. 26	1.	I	<b>51686.</b> 70		I.	
	23149. 12		2	52734-37		2	100544.46
3			2	53796. 11		3	
27) 0			38 0	54872.		46 0	
I	25025. 20		I.	55962. 14		· - T	105488.58
2	25672. 37	1	2:	\$7066. 62		2	
3	26330. 61		3	58185. 55		3	108872.98
30 0	27000.		39 0	55419.	ſ	47 0	110592.
I	27680. 64		I	60467.08	1	I	1
2	28372. 62		2	61629. 88		2	1 1 1 1
- 2	29076. 05	1	3	62807. 48	1	3	1115357.42

This is fuch a Shell as was mentioned in the Third Example of Chap. XIV.

Look for 15 Inches in the first Column of the Table towards the left hand, and for 4 Tenths of an Inch in the head of the Table; and against 15, and under 4, you shall find 61. 58, which is 61 Pounds, and 58 hundred parts of a Pound, which is fomewhat above half a Pound.

## CHAP. XVIII.

Concerning the Allowance of Powder for the Charge of any well Fortified Gun either Brass or Iron, according to the Weight thereof, from one hundred to ninety hundred Weight of Metal.

Well Furtified Gun, hath her Metal at the Vent or Touchthe bole as thick as her Diameter at the Bore : Now Gunners do allow three Ounces of Powder for every hundred Weight of Metal in Iron Guns: and Four Ounces for every hundred Weight of Metal in Brafs Guns : According to this Allowance.

How much Powder must be allowed for the Charge of an Iron Gun, whofe Weight is 22 hundred:

The Allowance for Iron Guns being 3 Ounces, Multiply 22 (the hundred Weights) by 3 (the allowance for Iron Guns) the Product will be 66, which divide by 16 (the Ounces in one Pound) the Quotient will be 4 and 2 remaining, which is 4 Pound and 2 Ounces; So that 4 Pound and 2 Ounces of Powder, will load fuch an Iron Gun.

But for a Brass Gun of the fame Weight you muft Multiply 22 by 4, and the Product will be 88, which divided by 16, the Quotient will be 5 Pound and 8 Ounces remaining, and fo much must be allowed for a Brass Gun of 22 hundred Weight.

And according to this Rule the following Table was made both for Brak and Iron Guns, from one hundred weight to 90 hundred Weight. А

Of Gunnery.

Quest. IV. If a Saker of 3 Inch. 3 Quar. Diameter at the Bore, require 4 Pound of Powder for her Charge, What will a Demi-Cannon of 6 Inches and a balf Diameter at the Bore require for ber Charge ?

The Cube of 3 Inch. 3 Qu. is 52.73: And the Cube of 6 Inch. and a half is 274.62;

Then fay, As 52.73 (the Cube of 3 Inch. 3 Quart.)

Is to 274. 62 (the Cube of 6 Inch. and a half),

So is 4 Pound (the Load for 3 Inches 3 Quarters), To 20.81 Pound (the Load for 6 Inches and a half.)

You are here to Note, That the Demi-Cannon should be fortified fo well as the Saker : The Cube of the Diameter of the Denii-Cannon is. 274, of the Saker 52; the Weight of the Saker 1600 : What should the Weight of the Demi-Cannon be?

Say, As 52 (the Cube of the Bore of the Saker).

Is to 274 (the Cube of the Bore of the Demi Cannon),

So 1600 (the Weight of the Saker),

To 8431 (the Weight that fuch a Demi Cannon frould be

of, to bear fuch a Charge proportionably to the Saker. ) But suppose the Demi Cannon to be no more then 6000 Weight; then Multiply 6000 by 20.81 (the Charge already Calculated), the Product will be 12486000, which if you divide by 8431 (the Weight the Demi-Cannon should be of) the Quotient will be 14.8, that is 14 Pound and 8 Tentlis of a Pound, which will be a fufficient Charge for fuctra Piece.

Queft. V. A Granado-shell being 14 Inches Diameter, and two Inches and a balf substance in Metal, what is the weight of the Metal, and the consent of the Concavity of the Shell in Cubical Inches.

1. The Cube of 14 the Diameter of the Shell, is 2747; which multiplied by 11, the Product is 30184, and that divided by 21, the Quotient is 14371, which is the folid Inches in the whole, Metal and Concave both if it were a a folid Bullet of 14 Inches Diameter.

2. For the Concavity, the thickness of the Metal being 2' Inches, the double thereof is 5 Inches, which fubftracted R from

from 14 Inches, there remains 9 Inches, for the Diameter of the Concave of the Shell; then the Cube of 9 is 729; which multiplied by 11 produceth 8019; and that divided by 21, the Quotient will be 381? for the folid Inches contained in the Concavity of the Shell: the 381 being Subiltracted from 1437, (omitting the Fractions in both Numbers) the remainder is 1056 Inches, the Cubical Inches of the Metal.

3. And because one Cubical Inch of Cast-Iron is by experience found to weigh 4 Ounces, multiply 1056 by 16, (the number of Ounces in one Pound), the Product will be 16896 Ounces, which divided by 4, the Quotient will be 4224, and that Number divided by 16, (the Number of Ounces in one Pound), the Quotient will be 264 Pounds, for the Weight of the Granado Shell.

Queft. VI. By the Mould and Burthen one Ship being known, how to build another Ship of the fame Mould, of any affigned Burthen, greater or leffer.

Suppose a Ship of 100 Tun, is found to be 44 foot long in the Keel, 20 foot broad upon the Midship beam, 9 foot deep in the Hold, and did Rack it with the Stem forwards 13 foot, and offward 7.

If (according to these Dimensions) you would build a Ship whose Burthen should be 200 Tun, the several Dimensions of the Members may be found as followeth.

1. For the Keel, it being 44 foot, the Cube thereof is 85184, double this Number (becaufe the Ship you are to build is double the Burthen of the other, viz. 200 Tun), and it makes 170368, the Cube Root whereof is 55, 441 foot; which is 55 foot, 4 Inches i of an Inch, for the length of the Keel.

2. For the breadth upon the Midship-beam 20 foot ; the Cube of 20 is 8000, the double whereof is 16000, whole Cube.Root is 25. 20 foot, that is 25 foot, 2 Inches and 2 of an Inch, for the breadth upon the Midship-beam.

3. For the depth in Hold 9 foot, the Cube of 9 is 729, the double whereof is 1458, whole Cube-Root is 11.34 foot; that is 11 foot, 4 Inches for the depth in Hold.

# Of Gunnery. 127

A Table shewing what Quantity of Powder (in Pounds and hundred parts of a Pound) will fill any Granado Shell whole Diameter is known : Tenths of Inches. 0 2 5 8 7 3 4 8 | 9 1 20.01 20.02 20.03 100.04 02.05 00.06 00.07 00.08 00.10 00.12 2 30.14 30.16 00.18 00.20 30.28 00.26 30.28 00.32 00.37 00.4 ••• 2 30.45 30.50 00.55 00.61 00.63 00.72 00.7 00.86 00.92 01.00 Diamter 4 21.08 01.16 01.25 01.34 01.41 01.54 01.64 01.75 01.8 01.98 5 02.11 02.22 02.37 02.51 02.65 02.80 02.96 03.12 03.29 03.40 603.6403.8304.0204.1704.4204.630+8405.0701.3005.54 **.** 7 5.78 06.0 3 06.29 06.56 06.83 07.11 07.40 07.70 03.00 08.31 Inches 8 3 8.65 3.96 9.30 9.64 09.97 10.25 10.73 11.1011.2 11.80 912.29 12.70 13.13 13.56 14.00 14.45 24.92 15.39 15.87 16.36 10 16.86 17.35 17.89 18.42 18.97 19.52 10.08 20.66 21.24 21.83 lole 11 22.44 23.06 23.69 24.32 24.98 25.64 26.32 27.00 27.70 28.41 12 29.14 29.87 30.57 31-37 12.15 32.93 33.72 24.53 25.25 36.19 1 3 37.04 37.91 38.77 39.67 47.50 41.48 42.41 43.36 44. 1 45.28 14 46.26 47.26 48.27 49.30 50.34 51.40 52.47 53.56 54.66 55.77 15 59.90 58.04 59.21 60.39 61.38 62.78 64.01 65.24 66.50 67.73 16 69.06 70.36 71.68 73.02 74.37 75.74 77.12 28.53 79.94 181.38

## The Use of this Table.

Exam. 1. If the Diameter of a Granado-Shell, be 7 Inches, how many Pounds of Powder will fill the (ume ?

Look for 7 in the first Column of the Table towards the left hand, and right against it you shall find 5.78, which is 5 Pound, and 78 hundred parts of a Pound, which is fome-what above 3 Quarters of a Pound : And fo much will fill fuch a Shell.

Exam. 2. Suppose the Diameter of a Granado-Shell to be 15 Inches and 4 Tenths of an Inch: How much Powder will fill that Shell?

122

This

The Cube of 4 Inch. 3 Qu. is 107. 17:

The Weight of an Iron Shot of that Diameter is 14 Pound 14 Ounces (or Decimally 14. 87) which is 4 Ounces more than double 7. 31, for 7.31 doubled is 14. 62. So likewife 52. 73 doubled is 105. 46, which does not

exceed 107.17 (the Cube of 3 Inch. 3 Quart.) being fo doubled.

## CHAP. XVII.

Concerning Gunpowder, and to find what quantity will fill any Granado Shell or Cartridge.

I T hath been often Experimented in the Tower of London, that one Pound of Powder will fill 31 Cubical Inches, and 600 parts, which is, a little above half one tenth part of an Inch: This being allowed, it will be no hard matter to know what quantity of *Powder* will fill any Granado shell, or Cartridge. For the Proportion will be,

As 33.06 Cubical Inches,

Is to One Pound of Powder;

So is any other Number of Cubical Inches,

To the Number of Pounds of Powder that will fill those Inches.

A

Whether it be Granado shell or Gartridge.

But this work being fomething troublefome, I shall hereexhibit a *Table*, which by infpection only, will tell you what quantity of *Powder* will fill any *Granado-shell*, whose true Diameter is known, provided the *Shell* be perfectly Round.

# Of Gunnery.

122

4. For the Rack forward 13 foot; the Cube of 13 is 2197, the double whereof is 4394, whole Cube is 16.38 foot; that is 16 foot, 4 Inches and a half for the Rack forward.

5. For the Rack offwards 7 foot; the Cube of 7 is 343 the double whereof is 686, whole Cube Root is 8. 82 foot; which is 8 foot, 9 Inches, and 4 of an Inch, for the Rack offwards.

This is the natural way of working of these and the like Proportions, but when you have many Lengths to find, you may ease your felf of extracting fo many Cube Roots, for having found out one of them by the Cube Root, you may find out all the reft-by the Golden Rule of Proportion: Thus, having found the Length by the Keel to be 55.44, and you would find the length of the Midship beam proportionable to this, which in the Ship of 100 Tun was 20 foot: Say,

As 44 the length by the Keel of the Ship of 100 Tuns, Is to 55.44 the length by the Keel of the Ship of 200 Tuns, So is 9 foot, the depth in the Hold of the Ship of 100 Tuns, To 11. 34, the depth in the Hold of the Ship of 200 Tuns. And fo of all the Members, as in this Synopsis,

1. For the Midship beam :

As 44 is to 55. 44, fo is 20 to 25. 20:

2: For the Depth in Hold :

As 44 is to 55.44, 10 is 9 to 11. 34:

3. For the Rack forward :

As 44 is to 55. 44, fo is 13 to 16.38:

4. For the Rack offward :

As 44 is to 55. 44, fo is 7 to 8. 82:

Or thus, having the proportion of one Cube to another Cube, you may work by that in this manner.

<u> </u>	1 Being 1. 000	•	
1	2 The Double ?	T. 260]	
	2 The Triple	1. 442	
The Cube of	4 The Quadruple	1. 557	
	5 The Quintuple > thereof	15 1: 710 >	
í	6 The Sextuple	j 1. 817	
	7 The Septuple	I: 913 2. 000 J	
	8 The Octuple J	2. 000 <b>j</b>	'
	R 2	And	

124

And thus, by the forefaid Supposition a Ship of 100 Tuns being 44 Foot by the Keel, the Length of the Keel for a Ship of 200, 300, 400 Tun, may be found by these Proportions:

Tuns			Feet.	
[200]		I. 260]	Eer Ano	<b>i</b>
0 300	Say, as 1. coo is to 44, foc	1. 442 [	63. 448	
·= 400	Say, as 1. COO	1. 557	69. 828	the length
500	is to 44, for	1. 710 \$ 10	75. 240	> by the
J 600	is	1. 817	1/9.94	I INCOL!
LOL 600		1. 913	81. 1/2	
[800]		[2.000]	<b>88.</b> 000	
And fre	om these few F	Proportions r	may be dec	luced many

more, but these shall fuffice to shew the use of the Cube Root in this particular.

#### CHAP. XVI.

Concerning the Proportion of the Weights of Iron, Lead, Stone, & c. And how b, knowing the Weight of one Shot of Lead, to find the Weight of another of the like Diameter of Iron or Stone.

THE Proportion between Lead and Iron is as 2 is to 3; So that a Shot of 3 Pounds Weight of Lead, will be of equal Diameter to one of Iron of two Pound Weight.

The Proporties Gandy Stone Gis as 46 to 18 on between Firon & Stone Gis as 16 to 18 Firon & Stone Gis as 16 to 18 Firon & Stone Gis as 16 to 18

By these Proportions, may be easily Calculated (in case Iron-Shot be wanting, and Lead or Stone may be had), what Diameter and Weight, Shot either of Lead, Brass or Stone ought to be of, to fit any Piece of Ordnance: And from these Proportions the following Table is Calculated, for all Shots of Lead, Iron, and Stone, from two Inches Diameter to 8 Inches Diameter, by Inches, Halves and Quarters. By

IA	Tab	le ih	ewir	ng t	he W	/eig	ht of	1					
	any S	Shot	of h	071.	Lead.	orS	tone.						
	from 2 to 8 Inches Diameter.												
	ト	L	ad,		ron.	St	one,						
che	uar	Po.			Óи.	Po.	Ou.						
Inchesl ~		I	10	1	1	0	7						
	• 1		ť	I	9	0	9						
	2		3	2	2	0	12						
		4	5	2	14	I	1						
3	0	5	10	2	12	I ···	-,						
ľ	1	7 8	2	4	I 2	I	7 13	ŕ					
	2	8	IŞ	5	0	2	4						
	2			7	5	2	12						
4	0	13		8	15	3	6						
1	I		o	10	10:	4	· 0						
Ĺ		18	15	I 2	101	4	12						
I	3			<b>I</b> 4	14	5	9						
5		26	2	17	5	Ģ	· 8						
	I	30	-2	20	I	7	8						
		34	11	23		8	11						
-		39		26	6	9	14						
6		45	0	30		11	4						
	1	51	0	34	0	I 2	12						
1		57	0	38		14	4						
<u> </u>		62		42 48		15	<u>"12</u>						
7	c	72	0	<b>4</b> 8 <b>5</b> 3		18	.0						
1	1	79	ă	53		20	0 12						
	2	87	0	58		22	12						
-	<u>3</u>	9 <b>6</b>		4 <u>3</u> 71		24							
8	c	106	0	71	0	26	10						

By this Table you may fee, That if a Gun carry a Shot of  $\varsigma$  Inches and a half Diameter, that Shot, if of Lead, will weigh 34 Pound 11 Ounces. — It of Iron 23 Pound 2 Ounces: If of Stone but 8 Po. 11 Ounces, and io of any other, as in the Table.

- Note, The Stone here meant is Marble, Pebble, and fuch like, other Stone being more foir and porous; and confequently lighter.
- Allo Note, That in loading your Gun for a Stone-flot you are not to give her the fame Charge of Powder as for one of Lead or Iron, but abate according as the Proportions of the Metals are.

If you compare this Table with the former Table of Cube Roots, you thall find the Cube of each Number bear the like proportion one to another, as the Weight of

each Bullet is one to another of the fame Metal.

Example. The Cube of 3 and 3 Quarters is 52. 73: The Weight of an Iron-Shot, which is 3 Inch. 3 Quart. is 7 Pound 5 Ounces, (or Decimally) 7. 31:

Of Gunnery.

Secondly, If the first Shot had strok just under the Mark, then bring the Piece to its former position, and mark how much the Distart is over the stroke of the Shot, and cut off of it just formuch as being at the Breech of the Piece, you may discern the top of it, the Mark on the Base Ring, and the stroke of the Shot, in a right Line; and when you have brought it to such a length, level the Piece as before; Prime and give Fire.

Thirdly, If the first Shot had strook on the right hand of the Mark; to mend it, you must level the Piece as before; then standing at the Breech of the Piece, observe the stroke of the Shot over the Dispart, and on that part of the Base Ring which you then look over in a right line towards the Dispart and stroke of the Shot, set up a Pin with a little fost Wax : Then level your Piece to the Mark by this Pin and the Dispart, and then doubtles you will make a good Shot. For when you level by the Metal of the Base Ring, where the Pin is placed, and the Mark, the Piece standing at that direction, look over the top of the Dispart, from the mark in the Base Ring, and you shall find the Piece to lie for much to the Left, as the former Shot strook to the Right of the Mark; and should now in all probability his the Mark.

Fourthly, If the first show be both wide, and too high, or too low; then ale both the foregoing Directions: ----- First, Regulate the Dispars by making it longer, or cutting of it show ter, by the First and Second Directions hereof, the Show being Lower or Higher, and then make Use of this Third Diretion, for Shooting Wide: Which things being done with care and diligence, will doubtless mend a bad Shot

CHAP.

Of Gunnery.

. 129

A Tat low Ord	ed f	or 1	ving the	wha Cl a	it Q rge (	uant of a	ity ny	ot Brat	Pi ß	or	er i Iroi	s a	be liec	al- o of
C.Bra W Po.	<b>6.</b> 1	_lr			.   <i>Br</i> /   Po	аß. Юи	b Po	on. Ot			Bra Po			on. Ou
	04 08	00	03	33	1 1		05	13		61 62	45	4 8	11 11	7
300 401		0 <b>0</b>		3	4 0 8	08	06 06	6		63 64	15 16	1 2 0	I 1 12	<b>15</b> 0
<u>501</u> 601	08.		2		609	00	26 06	12		51 66	16	<u>4</u> 8		3
8 02		OI.	۲ 8 11		7 09 8 09 9 09	-0 <u>8</u>	06 07 07	_2		67 58 69	16 17	11	12	9
902 1002 1102	_	01	<u> </u>	4	010	00	07			70	17 17 17	4 8 12	12 1 <u>3</u> 13	15 2 5
12 03	00	ο <b>z</b>	<b>4</b> 7	. 14	2 10	• • • • • • , 8 I2	07 08	14		-2	18 18	0 4	13	11 11
1403 1503	• <b>8</b>	02	10	- 14	411		<b>98</b>	<b>4</b> _7		74 75	18 18	8 12	13 14	14
1604 1704	94	94	- 3	4		12		13		76 77	19 19	04	14 14	4 7
18 04 19 04 20 05	12	03.		4	8 12 9 12 12	4	09 09 09	с 3 6		78 79 80	19	8 12 c	14 ₽4 €5	10
21 0 f	04	03	15	5	12	12		9	1 1	81 82	20	4.8	15	
2305	32	•4	5	-5	413	# <b>A</b>	<i>9</i> 9			83 84	20	12	•	9 12
2506 2606	<b>5</b> 8	04	14	5	5 <b>1 3</b> 6 <b>1 4</b>	و ا	10				21 2+	8	15 16	15
2706	00	05	14	5		8	10 10	11 14		87 88	2I 22	0	16 16	5 8
2907			7 10		914 015		11	1 4	۱.	89 90	22 22	4		11 14 And

136

The Dife of the TABLE.

It an Iron or Brass Gun do weigh 57 hundred Weight, what Quantity of Powder must be allowed for her Charge. Look for 57 in the Column of the Table that hath C W

at the top of it, fignifying hundred Weight; and against 57 (towards the right hand)you shall find 14 Pound 4 Ounces for to Load a Brass Gun; and 10 Pound 11 Ounces to Load an Iron Gun of 57 hundred Weight.

## CHAP. XIX.

Concerning Cartredges, how to make them, and fit them, fitting for the Bore, or Chamber of any Piece of Ordnance.

I. How Cartredges are made

Artredges are made of Stiff Paper, or Canvass, the breadth of which must be three Diameters of the Bore of the Chamber of the Gan for which it is made, and about four Diameters for the length: These pieces (if Canvass) must be fewed about a Former, which is a round piece of Wood, which must be a very little less than the Diameter of the Bore (or Chamber) of the Gan; unto which a Bottom of Canvass must also be fewed: But if you make your Cartredge of Paper, then must you rowl the Paper about the Former, and paist the Edges together, and also fit a Bottom thereto.

# 135

## CHAP. XXII.

#### How to give Level with a Piece of Ordnance to make a Shot at any mark within Point blank.

**F** Irst, fet your Dispart upright upon the Muzzle-Ring just over the Center of the Mouth of the Piece : Then go to the Base Ring, and make a mark upon the highest part thereof, which is just over the Cylinder (if the Piece be true Bored) and take that for your true line.

This done, go to the Breech of the Piece, and hold your head about two Foot there from, bringing your Eye, the mark upon the top of the Bafe Ring, the top of the Difpart, and the Mark you are to fhoot at, all into one right line: which may be done by causing a Matrofs to raife or fall the Gun with an Hank frike, as you shall direct him; and then ftop the Motion of the Piece with a Coyne; then Prime the Peece, and give Fire.

## CHAP. XXIII.

Shewing how to amend a Shot, which (by some accident) dothcarry over, under, or wide of the Mark intended.

WHEN you have made one Shot, which doth not an. fwer your expectation, it must be either Higher, Lower, or Wide of the Mark, or both: To remedy any of which observe these following Rules:

First, If at the first Shot you find the Piece to shoot directly over the Mark; Then so much make your Dispars longer, that the top of it may be just seen from the top of the Bale Ring to the stroke of the shot; and with this new Dispars level your Piece and give Fire Secondly,

#### CAUTION:

If you find that the Ground is not level on which your Carriage ftands, and that one Wheel is higher than the other: The Trunnions out of due place: The Piece not lying truly in the Carriage: The Carriage not truly made: you must get their things amended before you shoot. Otherwise never expect to make a true Shot.

#### CHAP. XXI.

Concerning Shooting in Great Ordnance, and how to Load your Gun Artificially, either with Powder or Cartredge.

W Hen you come to Charge your Piece, fet your Bondge-Barrel on the Wind fide thereof; and caufing one of your Matroffes to hold the fame allope, thrust your Ladle into the fame, filling it full of Powder, and then ftrick it with a Ruler : Then fixing your Thumb just under the Staff of the Ladle, thrust the fame home to the Chamber of the Piece. where the Powder is to lie, turning the Ladle fo, as your Thumb be directly above the Staff, to will the Powder empty it felf cleanly out of the Ladle : Then draw out the Ladle. and with the Tampion at the other end of the Staff, thruft home the Powder, caufing one of your Affiltants to hold his Finger or Thumb close on the Touch hole: then take a round close wad of Hay, (or untwifted Rope) thrust in the fame with the Rammer head which is at the end of the Spunge Staff, and with it give three or four good ftrokes ; this done, put in your Bullet with a Wad after it, if the Piece be not elevated; but without any Wad after it, the Gun being elevated, for then there is no fear of its rowling out.

If you Load your Gun with a Cartredge (which is the beft way) put the Cartredge home with the Rammer, and after it a fufficient Wad. CHAP.

Of Gunnery. 131

## II. How to fill Cartredges.

#### The Diameter of the Cartredge, and the Pounds of Powder that will Load the Piece, being known to find the length of the Cartredge when filled.

Let the Diameter given be 6. 3 (that is 6 Inches and 3 tenth parts of an Inch) and let the quantity of Powder be 14. 5 (that is 14 Pound and a half :) And let it be required, to find how high the Cartredge mult be filled, that it may hold just fo much Powder. To effect this it will be requisite to find the Area of the Circle of the Cartredge in Inches and Decimal parts of Inches: to find which this is the Proportion :

As 28, Is to 22;

So is the Square of the Diameter 29.69 Inches,

To the Area, 21. 18 Inches.

Multiply 6. 3. the Diameter in it felf, and the Product will be 39. 69 Inches, which is the Square of the Diameter; this (always) Multiply by 22, and it produceth 873. 18, which divide (always) by 28; and the Quotient will be 31. 18 Inches, and 10 many Square Inches are contained in the Area of the Circle of the Cartredge.

Exam: The Area thus found, the Weight of Powder for Loading 14. 5 Pound, and the number of Cubical Inches in one Pound of Powder, viz. 31.06 known: To find how high the Cartredge muft be filled.

This is the Proportion :

As the Inches in the Area of the Circle 31. 18, Is to the Powder allowed for Loading; 14. 5 Pound, So is the Cubical Inches in other Pound of Powder, 31.06, To the depth of the Cartredge to be filled 14. 4 Inches: Wherefore,

Multiply 31.06 (the Inches in one Pound of Powder) by 14.5 Pound (the allowance for Loading), the Product will be 450.370; which divided by 31.18 (the Inches in the S 2 Circle

Circle of the Cartredge) the Quotient will be 14. 44 Inches, which is 14 Inches, and 44 hundred parts of an Inch, and fo high must the Cartredge be filled.

This is the Arithmetical way to perform this Work, but it may be much abreviated by help of this little Table following, which will require but one fingle Multiplication.

Inches in the	Te	enths o	f Inch	es in th	ie Dian	neter o	f the C	Cartred	ge or S	ho <b>t.</b>
Diam. of the	0	I	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Cartr. or Sh.	In. <sup>1000</sup> parts.	In. 1000 parts.	In. 10,00 parts	In. 1000	In. 1000 parts.	In. <sup>1000</sup> parts,				
2	9.889	8.970	8.17,	7.471	6.868	6. 330	5.852	5. 427	5.046	4.704
4	2. 473	2. 333	2: 243	2. 141	2.04+	1.954	1.879	2.890 1.791	1.717	1.648
5	1.582	1. 522	1. 463	1.408	1: 357	1.308	1.258	1: 218 0. 881	1:175	1:127
7	0.806	0.785	0. 763	0. 742	0 722	0.930	0: 585	0. 667	0.855	0.634
	<u>т</u>			of De	ash of	he Ce		eh 🏭	000	

The Quantity of Depth of the Cartredge, that one Pound of Powder will fill.

The Use of this Table.

1. The Diameter of a Cartredge being given to find how much of that Cartredge one Pound of Powder will fill.

11.00

Exam. 1. If the Diameter of a Cartredge (or the bollow Chamber or Cylinder of a Gun) be 5 Inches, how much thereof will one Pound of Powder fill?

Look for 5 Inches in the first Column towards the Left hand, against which stands 1.582, which is one Inch, and 582 thousand parts of an Inch, and so much will one Pound of Powder fill of that Cartredge or Cylinder.

Exam.

Exam. 2: If the Diameter of a Cartredge, or Cylinder of a Gun be 4 Inches and 3 Tenths, how much thereof will one Pound of Powder fill ?

Look for 4 Inches in the first Column, and for 3 tenths in the head of the Table, and against 4 and under 3, you shall find 2.141, that is, 2 Inches, and 141 thousand parts of an Inch, and so much will one Pound of Powder fill.

II. The Diameter of the Cartredge, 6. 3 Inches, and the quantity of Powder that will Load the Gun, 14. 5 Pound, being known, to find how much of the Cartredge must be filled to hold for much Powder.

Look for 6 Inches in the first Column, and for 3 in the head of the Table; and against 6, and under 3, you shall find 0. 996, that is, no Inches, but 996 thousand parts of an Inch; and fo much will one Pound of Powder fill: Now if you multiply 0. 996 by 14. 5 (the quantity of Powder to Load the Gun) the Product will be 14. 44, that is 14 Inches, and 44 hundred parts of an Inch, and to high mult the Cartredge be filled: agreeable to the former Example.

## CHAP. XX.

Concerning Carriages for Pieces of Ordnance, and how they should be made.

I. MEasure the length of the Cylinder of the Gun; once and a half that length (hould the Carriage be.

2. Measure the Diameter of the Bore of the Piece, four of those Diameters is the depth of the Planks at the fore-end: In the middle three and a half: At the end next the Ground two and a half: And in thickness one Diameter.

3. The Wheels should be one half the Length of the Piece in height: The Saker and Minnion Wheels must exceed the former by one twelfth part: The Faucon and Fauconet by one fixth part.

132
Exam. Suppose I find by my first Shot, that the Bullet grazed from my Gun 704 Paces, the Mounture of the Peece being 4 deg. How much must I Mount her, so that the may convey her Shot 900 Paces?

These distances of *Randoms* are to be proportioned to those in the Table, by this Anology.

As 704 Paces, (the Graze of the Bullet at 4 deg. of Mounture,) Is to 370 (the Paces against 4 deg. of Mounture)

So is 900, (the number of Paces to be Shot)

To 473, the Number to be found in the Table answerable to the Degrees of Mounture required.

Therefore, multiply 370 (the number against 4 deg.) by 900, (the number of Pacesto be Shot,) the Product will be 333000, which divided by 704 (the Graze of the Bullet at the first Shot) and the Quotient will be 473; which number I should feek in the Table, but finding it not there, I take 451 the next lefs, against which stands 6 degrees, and 505 the next greater, against which stands 7 deg. the difference between these two numbers is 44, which shews the Piece must be Mounted to 4 deg. and on third part of a degree for to reach the distance of 900 Paces: For 461 is lefs by 12 then 473, which is near one third part of 44 the difference.

This Table beforegoing was deduced from an experiment made by Mr. Nat Nye the Mafter Gunner of Worcefter in Anno 1647. But this Table being very flort, and the use of it to abfolutely neceffary for Gunners (especially in Land Service) I shall exhibit to their view Two other Tables tending to the fame purpole, long lince calculated by an able Mathematician, viz. Mr. Henry Bond, which with their Use take as followeth.

## CHAP. XXIV.

Concerning a Gunner's Ruler, for the Elevating of any Piece of Ordnance to any degree of Mounture, fupplying the Use of the Gunner's Quadrant.

**F** Orafinuch as a Quadrant cannot at all times be conveniently used; as when the Wind is high: Also in taking the depth or profundity of a Valley, or altitude of a Hill,  $\mathcal{C}c$ . For the removing of all which inconveniencies this Gunner's Rule was invented, the Description and Figure whereof follow:

т

The



Saying

#### The Description of the RULER.

The Ruler may be of any length, with a large Slit in the middle for a Slider to move in, and in the Slider a Hole to look through: The Ruler must be flit quite through at the bottom, and a piece of Brass fastned over it; but at the top it may be left whole for half an Inch or more; in which whole part, a Nut may be fastned, through which a Screw must pass, to raife or depres the Slider as occasion requires : On both fides of the Slit, the Ruler must be divided into Feet and tenth parts of a Foot; and every one of those parts into 10 mere, fo then every Foot will be divided into 100 parts .---- Through the Center of the little Hole, a fmall Line must be drawn quite thro' the Slider, which will shew at what height the Sight-hole ftandeth from the Bafe Ring of the Gun.-Alio there must be an Index to hang on the edge of the Ruler, and under it a small Pin, perpendicular to the Pin on which the Index hangeth ; which is to fet the Ruler perpendicular or upright.

#### The Use of the RULER.

The principal Use of the Ruler is (as I faid before) to Elevate any Gun to any degree of Mounture. To perform which, there is to be used with the Ruler, this brief Table of Natural Sines following.

#### The use of the Table.

E Xample 1. Suppose a Gun, which is 8 Foot, and 7 Tenths of a Foot Long, between the Base and Muzzle Rings, the which Gun being Mounted and Disparted, is to be Elevated to 2 Degrees and 6 Tenths of a Degree of Mounture. A Table

# CHAP. XXVI.

Gunnery.

#### Concerning Shooting at Randon:

HE that would learn perfectly to Shoot ot Randon, ought, to draw his Piece into a level ground; Where, First, Shooting level, let him observe the distance in Feet or Paces, from the Gun to the Graze of the Buller: Then mount his Piece to one degree, and mark where that doth graze, noting the distance as before; Then, to z, 3, 4, &c. degrees, to Ten degrees, and by these Elevations and Distances make a Table, by which Table, you may, by the Rule of Proportion, find how far another Piece will carry her Shot from degree to degree of Elevation: — But, because, it is probable, that every ordinary Gummer cannot have leave or opportunity ( the charge being great) to make fuch Experiment, I shall here exhibit.

to your View, a fhort Table of Mr.N.N. by him made out of a Saker 8 Footlong, Loaded with 3 Pound of Powder; At the firft Shot (at one deg. of Mounture) fhe conveyed her Shot 1125 Feet, or 225 Paces: The fecond Shot, at 5 deg. of Mounture fhe conveyed her Shot 2180 Feet or 416 Paces: At the third Shot, at 7 deg: of Mounture, 505 Paces: And the laft at 10 deg. 630 Paces: In which Experiment, he loaded his Piece with loofe Powder exactly Weighed, alfo he weighcd the Wad, and beat down the fame with the like (or equal) ftrength; and

Degrees of Elevation	Randons in Paces, §f. to a Pace.
I	225
2	274
3	323
4	
5	416
	461
7 8	505 548
	548
9	-589
10	630

let the Piece cool half an hour between each Shot: Now by this Table and the Rule of Propotion may be found to what elevation another Gun must be mounted to reach any diffance required: Exam

135

The Use of this Table.

If you are defitute both of a Quadrant or a Gunners Ruler, yet may you Level a Gun to any degree of Mounture under eleven deg.

Exam. 1. Suppose you have a Gun whose length is 9 Foot and half, and you would elevate it to 5 degrees of Mounture.

Look in the Table for the length of the Gun, 9 Foot and a half, in the first Columb of the Table, and in that Line under 5 deg. you shall find 10.0, which is just 10 Inches, wherefore take any strait stick, and cut it off at that length, which set perpendicularly upon the top of the Bale Ring, and level over the top of the Stick, as if it were the hole in the Slider of the Ruler, and the top of the diffrart upon the Muzzle Ring, and you will make a good Shot.

Exam. 2. Suppose your Gun were 12 Foot long, and you would Mount her to 7 degrees of Elevation.

Look for 12 Foot long in the first Columb, and for 7 deg. in the head of the Table, and against 12 Foot, and under 7 deg. you shall find 17. 71, which is 17 Inches and 71 hundred parts of an Inch (which is almost 3 quarters of an Inch) a Stick of that length fet perpendicularly upon the Base Ring, you may level over it by the top of the Dispart on the Muzzle Ring, as if it were through the hole in the Slider.

But if you would Level without a Difpart, then take the Difpart off, and lay it to the forefaid Stick, cutting fo much of it off, as was the length of the Difpart; then fet the remainder of the Stick upon the Baje Ring, and bring the top of the Stick, the Metal of the Muzzle Ring, and the Mark in one Right line, then Prime and give Fire, and doubtlefs you will make a good Shot.

CHAP.

1								1																
		6	151	013516	05059	068	27580	10270	12014	1374	š	17103	ŝ	2002	12375	24028	1.57	273	5	0	32392	6	÷.	37295
ule.		8	96210	03141	c4885	06627	08368	Hail I	11840	13572	I 5299	17021	18728	20450	22155	23853	25545	1	28903	ŝ	A1 (	33874	5511	37 LIO
A Table to be ufed with the Gunners Rule.		2	01222	02967	4711	06453	<b>98194</b>	25660	1 494 I 1 667	6   I 3399	9	71.6849	507	279	98 S	684	5207 25376	7060	8736	0403	1901	33710	35375	37002
Gunn	of Mounture.	9	01047	02792	04536 c	c6279	08020	~		13226	1495	1667	183 <b>9</b>	766 19927 20108 20	21814	2351423	5207	26842	2826	30237/30	31896			36812
b the		S	00873	02618	013 04158 04562	0593106105	2846	9585	E.	13053	14781	6505	18224	19927	1644	3245	e 6038	2655626724	282 4 28401	12006 30071	31730	3381	35021	488/3655036812
d wit	of a Degree	4	00698	<b>4</b> 43	04158	05931	07672	09237 09411	11147	12880	14608	16333	1788018052	19766	21474	ŝ	84869	2659	28224	29904	31565	\$32163	34857	30458
be ufe	arts of a	3	00524	e l	4	Š	07498	09237	10973	12706 12880 I		144		-		23005	24700	19 2638-	28067	2 9737 2	313		34694 348	36325
le to	Tenth Parts	3	00349	02094	03839	05581	0715007324	3909063	10780	36012533	5	81615988	17708	081 192 52 19422 195	21132	2 28 25 2 3		50 262 19	ക്	29404 29571	31233	32887	34530	37 36000 36162 3636325 364883
1 Tab	F	н	0017400	0192001	0366403	05402	5	08889	0452 10626	12360	14090	15816	17537	19252		249522665		26050	27731	29404	1060	57327223	34366	3 6000
Ň		0	00000	01745	o 3 <b>4</b> 90	058330540	\$2690	087150888	10452	12187	13917	15643158		. 5	20791	22495	24192	25882	27564	29237	30902	32557	34202	58
		1	0		(1)			un:				10 : 6	-	18:	13 D	ole E	÷.		16	17	18	, I9	30	21

Of Gunnery.

Τ2

Forafmuch

Forafmuch as the Gun is to be elevated 2 degrees and 5 Tenth parts of a degree; Look for 2 degrees in the first Colum of the Table, and for 6 parts of a degree in the head thereof ; And against 2, and under 6, you shall find this Number, 04536, which multiply by 8.7 (the length of the Gun in Feet and decimal parts of a Foot) the Product will be, 0394632. from which cut off (towards the right hand) five Figures for the Number taken out of the Table, and one for the 7 Tenths in length of the Gun, in all fix Figures, then will the Product stand thus 0. 394632, which o to the left hand is no Feet, but the 3 following is 3 Tenth parts of a Foot, and the 9 following is 9 Tenths of a Tenth part of a Foot, which is neer 4 Tenth parts of a Foot, and to that Number on the fides of the Ruler, must the stroke (and hale) in the Slider be brought, and then the Ruler is rectified for that Elevation

Exam: 2. Suppose a Cannon, whole Length is II Foot and 2 Tenths of a Foot, were to be Mounted to 14 deg. and 4 Tenths of a degree, to what divisions on the files of the Ruler must the Slider be fet ?

Look in the first Columb of the Table for 14 dez. and for 2 Tenths in the head of the Table, fo against 14, and under 4, you shall find this number 24869, which being multiplyed by 11.3 Foot, the length of the Gun, the Product will be 2810197; from which cut of 5 Figures for the\_ number in the Table, and I for the 4 Tenths in the length of the Gun, it will ftand thus 2. 810197, which is 2 Foot. and 8 Tenth parts of a Foot, and to that number on the Sides of the Ruler, must the Slider be fet, to mount the Cannon to 14.4 deg. of Elevation.

CHAP.

0f	Gunnery	-	133
Οŗ	Gunnery.		133

A Table, and the Ule thereof, whereby you may give Level to a Piece of Ordnance, without the Gunners Rule or Quadrant, to any degree of Mounture under 11 degrees.	the l	Ll <i>ti</i> ers Ru	le le	or Q	ada 12.	r <i>eby</i> Iran	у <i>он</i> 1, 1,	m. 0 am	ay gi iy de	2 20	L'e	ve] Ň	l re lou	a	Pi Ire	кис	ler	ŏĽ	lnai legi	ses.	
The Length of the	the	•	.			a	legr	ces	Degrees of Elevation.	ev.	atic	ġ		Í	ľ						
Gun.		-		3		3	4		ŝ		6			~		8	~``	0	-	01	
Five Foot		3	~	9 0. •	3	<u>∞a</u> .	4	1	5	146		12		198	<u></u>	219	12	12	25 10	20	
Six Foot		н н 4 6	<u>n n</u>	4 4 8 4	<u> </u>	49	44	565 8865		001		284 2887 2887	⊾∞	989 589	00	187	12/10 78/11	26 II 8 I2	11	4 v 6 v	<u> </u>
Six and a half	]	1 36	10	72	<b>† +</b>	∞		17		8	t_	15	1.	12	2	68	89/12	10	12	16	
<u>ц</u>	JL			94	4	41		88/7	m:	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~		8	2	30	11	17	13	24	4	5	
69	nalf	1 58	<u>.</u>	4	4	7	9	20		5	_	42	<u>e</u>	8	<u>2 </u> 8	되	4	11	4	6	
Eight Foot	4	1 68	~	30	5	4	0	72 8	•	4 o I o	<u>0</u>	30		761	13	<b>4</b>	<u>4</u> 15	I 2	16	82	
Nine Foot		1 290	<u>6 0</u> m n	200	~	377	~ ~	16 0	0 a v 4	5	2 5	4 0	2 :	<u>23</u>	4 i 1 v	<b>~</b> ~	216	7 X	<b>1</b>	900	
Nine and a hall		2	14		.10	2 <u>00</u>	_00	10		10	10		11	10	191	' [	00	14			
Ten Foot		2 10	. 4	30	9	30		40 IO		30 I 2		61	- 4	1.5	73 16	60	84 I 8	96	21	-00	
Len and a half		2	<u>+</u>	4	6	69	1	80	- 1	<u>x</u> [	5	28		48	5	8	68,10	ဆို	2	°	
Fleven and a half	٦ŀ٢	4.	4	626	5	030	•	24 11	1	<u>v</u> .	5	×0	91	20	20 [ 8		0	20	5	+	
Twelve Foot		4 V 4 V	+ 2	0 0 0 0		6 0 7 7	0	17	12 J 12 d	0.4	+ `	× ×	310	9 <b>2</b>	95 [ 9	2 2 2	7 7	0 00	<u>4</u> ,	н с 1 с	
I'welve and a half	halt	2 63	<u></u>	30	5	8910	01	12	2	15	2	7818	_\∞	-   4	1.7	4	1	6	22	<u> </u>	
Thirteen and a half	half	2 2 4		48	$\infty$ o	22		96		0	016	44	61	48	2 1	92/26	24	68	27	4	
L Fourteen Foor	IIPII		<u>ام</u>	108	$\infty$	20		<u>30</u>		2017	<u> </u>	4	<u></u>	∞ ∞ ·	88 22	2	2	کار	100	43	_
	-	56 7	3212	0.06	٥t	20	=	80  I 4		21/2		70/20	o l	Ś	65123	8	60 26	20	50	2	

XXV

۵.

◄

Ι C

Diameter of the Granado Shell, and made taper, and when filled with the Composition Following; it must be gently driven in amongst the Powder that is in the Shell, leaving a little of it without.

### The Composition for the Fuse.

Take one Pound of Powder, four Ounces of Salt-Peeter, one Ounce of Brimstone, all beaten to Powder, and fifted severally through a fine Searse. These ingredients well mixed together, making your Composition fit for use.

## How Granadoes are to be Charged in the Morter.

Great care ought to be taken in the Loading and Charging of the Morter, and for the fafe and effectual performance thereof, observe these following Directions.

First, Weigh the Powder which you put into the Chamber very exactly, and after it put in a close wad of Hay; which done, cut up a Turf of the ground, that may fill the botome of the Bole or Bore of the Morter, next to the Wad, which is better than a Tampion of wood.

Secondly, Your Grannado being prepared, fling it into the Mouth of the Morter; observing to have the Fuse of the Granado just in the Center of the Mouth of the Morter.

*Thirdly*, Go to the Breech of the *Morter*, and there thruft up a Wyre into the Touch-hole, to make all fure, and then prime it with good dry Powder, fuch as you may be fure will take Fire, for uponthis, both your own Life, and the fafety of the *Morter* (befides the difgrace) do depend.

#### Directions for Firing,

Provide finall Fufes, of about one quarter of an Inch bore, three quarters of an Inch in thickness; and eight Incheslong. Fill these with good Powder dust, moistned with Oyle of Salt-Peter, moisten it but a little, and put it in with an Iron Rammar.

# Of Gunnery.

137

The First Table of	The Second Table of
RANGES.	<i>R A NG E S</i> .
D. 1 $8758$ 3 $12391$ 6 $12832$ 2 $7813$ 3 $22344$ 6 $22908$ 3 $7077$ 3 $2300$ 6 $32989$ 4 $6482$ 3 $42260$ 6 $43075$ 5 $5911$ 3 $52221$ 6 $5581$ 3 $62183$ 6 $5581$ 3 $62183$ 6 $5581$ 3 $673276$ 8 $4932$ 2 $82111$ 6 $83493$ 9 $4669$ 3 $92077$ 6 $93621$ 10 $4440$ 4 $22044$ 7 $703762$ 11 $4237$ 4 $12012$ 7 $3916$ 12 $4055$ 4 $21981$ 7 $24086$ 13 $3889$ 4 $31952$ 7 $34276$ 14 $3741$ 4 $42007$ 7 $4489$ 15 $3606$ 4 $52076$ 7 $4489$ 15 $3606$ 4 $52076$ 7 $693621$ 10 $4440$ 4 $2012$ 7 $13916$ 12 $4055$ 4 $21981$ 7 $24086$ 13 $3889$ 4 $31952$ 7 $34276$ 14 $3741$ 4 $42007$ 7 $4489$ 15 $3606$ 4 $52076$ 7 $65006$ 17 $3370$ 4 $72113$ 7 $75033$ 18 $3266$ 4 $82150$ 7 $85690$ 19 $3279$ 4 $92189$ 7 $96263$ 2 $03080$ 5 $22317$ 8 $28059$ 2 $32845$ 5 $22317$ 8 $8825250$ 2 $92486$ 5 $92695$ 8 $937480$ 3 $000000$	$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $

The Use of the Two Tables.

Question 1. If a Gun does carry a Shot, at 13 deg. of Mounture 763 Paces: What is the Horizontal Rainge of that Gun?

Look in the first Columb of the first Table, for 13 the degrees of *Mounture*, against which you shall find 3829, Multiply this number by 763, the Paces that the Gun carried at 13 deg. of *Mounture*, the Product will be 2967307, from which cut off four Figures towards the right hand and it will be 296. 7307: So that the Gun will carry at the *Hriz*ontal Rainge 296 Paces, and 7-Tenths of a Pace.

Alfo, If a Piece carries her Shot, at 16 deg: of Mounture 1074 Paces, the Horizontal Raingeof that Peece will be found to be 374 Paces:

Question 2: If a Gun carries a Shot 296 Paces and 7 Tenths of a Pace at the Horizontal Rainge, how many Paces will she carry at 13 deg. of Mounture:

Look in the first Columb of the Second Table for 13 (the degrees of Mounture) against which stands 2.572, this number multiplyed by 296.7 (the Horizontal Rainge of the Piece) the Product will be 7631124, from which cut off 4 Figures, and it will be 763.1124, that is 763 Paces, and to far will that Gun carry its Shot at 13 deg. of Mounture, which is answerable, and proves the foregoing Question.

- In like manner you may find, That if a Gun at its Horizontal Rainge carry her Shot 374 Paces, at 16 deg. of Mounture it will convey her Shot 174 Paces.
- Question 3. If a Piece carry ber Shot 543 Paces at 11 degrees of Mounture, bow far will she convey ber Shot at 19 deg. of Mounture?
- Multiply the number flanding against 11 in the first Table, which

Of Gunnery. **\$**43

Suppose the Diameter at the Bore to be Nine Inches. Then The Length of the Morter must be 18 Inches. The Chamber in which you load with Powder 3 Inches Diameter, and 4 Inches and a half deep. The Thickness of the Metal about the Touch hole, 3 Inches. And The Thickness of Metal at the Mouth of the Morter one Inch and a half

To Prepare Granadoes for a Morter.

The Diameter from out to out of the Metal of a Granado Shell, ought to be one tenth part of an Inch leffer then the Diameter of the bore of the Morter, becaufe of cording them to fling into the Mouth of the Morter, and alfo tor fear of fecret Cracks, Flaws or Hony Combs, which cannot eafily be difcerned slet them thus prepared, juftly fit the bore of the Morter.



To make Fufes for Granado Shels.

In every Granado Shell, there is a hole left to put in a Fufe, or peece of wood in form of a Fawlet for a Spigot, which hole is to be one quarter the Diameter of the wooden Fufe; and the length of the Fufe must be about three quarters of the diameter

142

fecond. — The Third and Fourth Shots will be much like the Second. And now I will give you the reafon, why as the Piece grows hotter, one Shot will not exceed the laft before it, but every time come florter and florter.

The Piece waxing hotter, and by how much the hotter, by fo much the more attractive is the concavity of the Piece made; and becaufe the Shot is driven forth, or expelled, with no other thing then by the airy exhalation, or wind caufed through the Salt-Peter; therefore, by making fuch a Piece the more attractive with the more heat, which fuppeth and retaineth continually more and more of that Wind which should ferve to expel the Bullet; the vertue expulsive in that Piece, doth continually, more and more decreafe. and the Shot flyeth not with that fwiftnefs as it did before, although the two first things; that is, the breaking of the Aire. and the drying of the Powder every time more and more doth help much the Rainge of the Shot; which aid and help, as it is to be believed, that fomtimes it fupplyeth, and, perchance, gives advantage to that expulsive virtue which continually the Piece doth diminish or fup in, according as it heateth : So that the Third and Fourth Shots, will not be much differing from the Second Shot; neverthelefs, in continuance of time, the faid two accidents (that is, the opening of the Aire, and drying of the Powder by the heat of the Piece,) cannot fupply the Third accident ; that is, the virtue attractive, by reason, the attraction is augmented as the Piece heateth. And this caufed my Sixth and Seventh Shots to convey the Bullet 22 Paces fhorter then the First.

## CHAP. XXXI.

Concerning Shooting in a Morter-Piece, and of feveral Fire-Works, both for Sea and Land Service.

Morter Pieces are made of the fame Metal (Brafs or Iron) as Ordnance are made of; in the making (or Caffing) whereof these proportions are to observed.

Suppole

Of Gunnery.

which is 4237, by 543 (the Rainge at 11 deg. of Mounture) the product will be 2300691. Then multiply this product by 3:156 (the number ftanding against 19 in the fecond Table) and this fecond product will be 726. 380796, from, which feven figures being cut off towards the right hand, the remainder will be 726, and fo many Paceswill the Rainge at 19 deg. of Mounture.

And thus, If a Peece at 6 deg: of Mounture convey her Bullet 132 Paces, you shall find that at 12 deg. of Mounture she will convey it 181: 75 Paces:

### C H A P. XXVII.

How you may make a good Shot at your Enemies Light in a dark night.

T O perform this, difpart your Piece, with a piece of lighted Match, then bring your Gun, fo that you may fee the top of the Metal at the Breech of the Piece, the coal of the Match, and the Light you are to Shoot at, all in one Right Line; Which done, give Fire.

### CHAP. XXVIII:

How to make a perfect shot in a dark night, at any mark (within the reach of the Piece) that you can see in the day time.

Ount your Piece to the Mark in the day time (as is before directed) and fet down at what degree of Mounture it is elevated, then cut 2 ftrait flick which shall reach from the middle of the Mouth of the Piece, perpendicularly down to the Platform, where make a Mark : Alfo, cut another flick which shall reach from the middle of the Breech of  $U_2$  the

the Piece to the Platform, and there make another Mark, through which two Marks draw a right Line, extending it 4 or  $\varsigma$  Foot beyond the Marks, which call, *The Line of directi*on. Then in the night Seafon, Load your Gun with fuch quantity of Powder and Weight of Shot, as you know your Gun will carry to the Mark, then bring your Gun juft over the Line of Direction, and by help of your two Sticks, you may bring it to the like elevation it was in the day time. All this being done, Prime and give Fire.

### CHAP. XXIX.

#### How to make a good Shot at a Company of Souldiers paffing by; or at a Ship failing up a River.

The Gun being Charged with its due quantity of Powder and Shot, and upon a Level Rainge, right against fome Mark (as a bush Tree, ćc.) between which, and the Gun, the Souldiers are to March, then when the Souldiers begin to hinder your Sight from the March you before obferved, give Fire; and doubtles you will do good Execution.

Alfo, to level at a Ship Sailing up a River, the Gunner muft elevate his Piece by fome Cloud (if he have not fome eminent Mark on the other Side of the River) and when the fore part of the Ship shall come to be against the Mark, immediately give Fire.

### CHAP. XXX.

Some Reasons, Why one and the fame Piece of Ordnance at the fame Elevation, charged with the fame quantity of Powder, and directed to the felf fame Mark, and difcharged feveral times, shall have different Rainges.

**F**Or farther fatisfaction in this particular. I muft refer my Reader (as Ifaid at the beginning hereof) to fuch Authors Of Gunnery.

1

thors as have particularly difcourfed of the Philosophical reafons hereof; As to Mr. Digs in his Pantometria and Stratiaticus; Mr. Smith, Mr. Bourne, Mr. Norton, Nicholaus Tortalia, and of late experimented by a painful man, in finding out the reafons of these Experiments, my loving Friend Mr. Robert Anderfon; But thall here infert an Experiment made by Mr. Nat Nye fometime Mr. Gunner of the City of Worcefter, which take as followeth, viz. I have (faith he) difcharged a Piece feven times in the space of 50 minutes with the like Weight of Powder, Shot, and Elevation, and have found their Rainges as followeth, viz.



So that the greatest difference from the first Shot was about 24 Paces.

The Reafon of these things is this. At the First Shot, the Bullet found the Aire quiet. — And at the Second Shot, it did not only find the Aire flirred with the first Shot, but also tending towards the place at which it Shot, and because it is more easie to move and penetrate that which is already moved and open, then that which is close and quiet, it followeth that the Second Shot, finding in its Rainge a lesser relistance then the first did, it did out Shoot the first.

A Second Reafon is, At the first Shot the Powder being put into the Piece, doth oftentimes find the fame fomewhat moift, by which means the Powder will not fire quickly, as when the Piece is dry, and temperately warm, for this warmth, will fomewhat dry up the moifture which is in the Powder, and caufe it to fire fooner, wherefore the Powder doth not work fo forcibly in the first Shot, as it doth in the fecond

OFTHE

140

# MEASURING OF Heights, Depths, and Distances.

1. How to take the Height of a Tree, Tower, Steeple, or other upright Building, by the Length of the Shadow thereof.



Et B A be a Caftle Wall, or the like, and the Sun shining Lo cafts the Shadow thereof upon plain ground to C, now having a Walking faffe in my hand, I fet that upright at the end of the shadow of the Wall at C, and I find; that my Staffe cafts its shadow to E, where I make a Mark, as also another at C, then measuring my Staffe, I find it to be 28 Inches long, and measuring the length of the shadow thereof CE, I find that to be 46 Inches. Then Imeasure the length of the Shadow of the Caftle Wall A C, and I find that to be 30 foot, which is 360 Inches

Of Gunnery.

133

Rammer. Then try whether you like the time that they continue burning, and if you find they burn too flow, leften your quantity of Oyle of Peter; but if too fast, adde more Oyle thereto.

All things being thus ready, Thruft the Pike of your Lin-Hock in at one end of the Fule, you intend to give fire at; and bid one of your Affiftants come on one fide of the Mouth of the Morter, and give fire to your Fuse, wherewith fire the Fufe in the Morter, and then with fpeed give fire to the Touchhole. It is far more certain to fire a Morter piece with Fufes then with Match, which doth often fail.

## How to Level the Morter Piece that it may make an effectual Shot at any Mark affigned.

You ought (as in finding the Rainges of other Pieces of Ordnance) to get leave to try One, Two or Three Shots for practice, without breaking of the Shell, which you may thus effect.

First, Fill the Shell with powder, then put it out again, and Weigh it exactly, and fill the Shell again with the like weight of Earth.

Secondly, Take a Fuse, and at the end of it tie 3 or 4 ounces of powder, which put down with the Fuse amongst the earth first making way for it by thrusting in a Staffe,

Thirdly, Level your Morter by help of a Square of Quadrant to (always) above 45 degrees, and what degrees you mount it to note down carefully.

Fourthly, All things being ready, and the Shell in and primed; caule One or Two to go and observe whether the Fuse burn all the while the Granado is flying, and when the 3 or 4 Ounces of powder takes fire, for hereby you may mend your Fufe, and try whether it will keep fire.

Fifibly, These things observed, Measure that distance, and note it down under the degrees of mounture, as also the Weight of the powder the Morter used to convey the Shell that diftance. And when you have thus done two or three х times

times, you may gain experience both of your Fuse, and of the true Range of the Piece: which obtained, if you are to ftorm a Fort or Castle

Sixthly, Take the diffance to the Town, Fort, or other thing you are to fhoot at, by which (and your former experiment) you may find at what degree of *Mounture* your *Morter* is to be *elevated* to reach fuch a *Town*, or the like; and that by the *Reverfe Rule of Proportion*: Thus:

As the diftance when you made your trial,

Is to the degrees of the then Mounture;

So is the diffance to your defigned Place,

To the degrees to which the Morter must be elevated to reach that defigned Place:

#### EXAMPLE.

Imagin that you made your Experimental Shot at 46 deg of *Mounture*, and the Shell flew 320 Paces; how many degrees must the *Morter* be elevated, to cast its *Shell* 280 Paces, the distance that the place you are to shoot at, is distant from the Morter?

Multiply 320, by 46, the Product will be 14720, which divide by 280, the Quotient will be 52 Paces, and almost a half, and to so many degrees of *Mounture* must the *Morter* be mounted to convey its Shell 280 Paces.

#### Some Cautions relating to the foregoing Section, concerning the Morter-Piece;

1. Let your *Powder* (when you are to fhoot often to the fame place) be all of the fame ftrength and goodnefs.

- 2. Use not Tampions of Wood, but a Wad of Hay and a Turf of Earth, both rammed in with the like strength.
- 3. Try your Shells before you fill them, by putting in a little Powder, and firing it, immediately ftopping the *Fuse-bole* with Clay, for if any Smoke come out, the Shell is defective.

4. Weigh

Fire works made of the Composition, and Arming as aforefuid, may be ordered to as to be thrown out of mens hands, shot out of a Musket, or out of a Cross or Long Bow; which inay be of good use to fire Sails, Thatched Houses, Stacks of Corn or Hay, &c.

Of Gunnery. -

#### To make a Composition that will burn and feed upon the water.

Take of Mastick half a pound; White Frankincense, Gum Sandrake, Quick Lime, Brimstone, Camphire, Gun powder, of each one pound and a half; Rozen one pound; Salt-Peter four pounds and a half: All these mixed together when fired will burn violently and feed upon the water.

#### To make a Composition that will burn under the Water.

Take of Brimftone one pound; Gun-powder ten Ounces; Salt-Peter one pound and a half; Campbire beaten with Sulpbur and Quick-filver: Mix these well together with Oyl of Peter, or Lin-feed Oyl boyled; fill a Ball or other Cafe of Wood, or Tin, with this Composition; Arm it as before, and ballast it with Lead at the bottom; make a finall hole at the top, and fire it well and throw it into the Water.

٩,

## F I N 1 S.

131



ted, and heat over a gentle fires fteep Toe or Flax in the fame, and then wrap the Tee orFlax about a Hoop, and then cover all this again with Powder-dust; and when you use them, give fire to them, and caft them among your Enemies; the Hoops ought not to be too big; but if you will, you may bind two of them a crofs, like a Tavern Buf, and then fire and fling them as afore.

A Fire Wheele.

To make a Composition to fill Pikes, Darts, Javelines, Trunks, Balls, and other Fire-works; to defend a Ship or Breach, or to enter the same : Or to Stick into the fide of a Ship, or other Place.

Take of Powder bruifed eight Pound; Peter in Roach one pound; Peter in Meal one pound; Sulphur in Meal two pound ; Rozen three pound ; Turpentine one pound ; Vert degreace half a pound ; Bolearmonick 5 Ounces; Bay Salt fix Ounces; Colofonia 3 Ounces; Arfnick 2 Ounces. Mix thefe very well together: This Composition when fired will burn very furioufly with a Blew and Greenish colour.

The Cafes, Bags or Balls, which you fill with this Compolition, must (when filled) be Armed about with ftrong Twine or Cord, and then covered over with this mixture, melted in a Pot.

Pitch 4 pound; Lin-feed Oyl one pound; Turpentine ; Ounces; Sulphur one pound ; Tar 5 Ounces; Tallow one pound.

Your Fire-works thus prepared are fit for fervice at any time; but when this outer Coating is cold, bore two holes with an Iron Bodkin, filling the fame with fine Mealed Powder, putting in a fmall flick at each hole, which take out when you prime them for firing.

Of Gunnery.

- 4. Weigh every Shell before you fill it, and make them all of one Weight, by putting in thereto fo many Mufket Bullets as will make their Weight even.
- 5. Fill your beavieft Shell with Powder (for that will contain least Powder) which done, pour it cut again, and weigh it very exactly; for fuch a quantity (and no more) will ferve all your Shells.

#### To make Granado's to be caft out of Mens Hands.

These finall Granadoes are of no less effeem than the greater, either for Offence or Defence : To make them, First fill those small Shells with fine Gun powder, then make Fufes of one Pound of Gun. powder, fix' Ounces of Salt peter, and one Ounce of Charcole: Or if you would have them of lefs durance, you may make them of the Composition for Great Granadoes : Knock the Fuje up to the head within one quarter of an Inch, which is only to find it out by in the Night : Stop well the reft of the hole in the Granado, (and other flaws if any be) with foft Wax, then Coat it with Pitch and Hurds left it should break with the fall; and be fure, that as foon as you have fired the Fufe, you call the Granado out of your hand.

Of the PETARD. These Petards are made of Copper and Brafs mixed; and their dimensionsare fitted according to the use for which they are prepared; there being three chief uses of them, and fo many forts there are, viz. fome for blowing up and breaking of Bridges; others for Gates that have Percullifies belonging to them; and the third fort for ordinary Gates



1. Those for Bridges are commonly 11 Inches long, and at the breech feven Inches and a half about, and 5 Inches wide within; the Metal at the breech must be one Inch and a Quarter thick, and at the neck half an Inch thick, befides the Muzzel-ring; the mouth must be 10 Inches wide, and to the Touch-hole must be added a Pipe, as is in the Figure.

¥36

2. The fecond fort for Gates with Percullifies, mult be gInches long, almost half an Inch thick at the neck, and an Inch thick at the breech, the mouth mult be about 7 Inches wide, and the outside of the breech mult be fix Inches wide, and the infide four Inches.

3. The third fort, which is for Gates and Palifadoes, must be feven Inches long, one fifth part of an Inch thick at the neck, and three quarters of an Inch at the breech, the mouth must be 4 Inches wide, at the outfide of the breech it must be 3 Inches and a half, and at the infide thereof 3 Inches.

The Charges for these *Petards* are to be of the fineft powder that can be got, beaten hard in the *Petard*, yet nor to break the Gun, then must it be ftop: close in with a Board of about an Inch thick, justly fitted thereunto with Wax melted to ftop the Crivesses about to keep out water, you must not charge it up to the top, but leave the breadth almost of two Inches empty, which must be filled up with Tow close ftopped in, and a linnen Cloth bound about the *Petards* neck to keep it close in.

The Touch hole must be stopped with a Cork, and over that a Sear-cloth to keep it from the Wet.

The Charge for this fort of *Petard*, is 5 or 6 pound of powder. Those of the second fort from 3 to 4 pounds. And for the smallest, from one pound and a half, to one pound.

Of Gunnery. 137

To make Dats or Fire-Arrows.



Provide a long Staff, and joyn unto it an Iron head, and about the middle of that head of Iron, having first made a Bag of strong Canvas, in form of an Egg, leaving open at the end a hole to fill the Bag with the *Composition* following,

Take one Pound of Salt-peter, half a Pound of Gun powder, and as much Brimstone in Powder, mix all these together with Oyl of Petriol; with this Composition fill the Bag, round about the Arrow-bead, and bind all about with nealed Wyre.

For the Priming of these Darts or Arrows, Dip Cotton-Week into Gun powder wet with water, and let the Cotton be well dried before you use it.

For the joyning of the Staff to the Arrow bead, let it be done very flightly, that the Arrow-bead being faltned into any, thing, those may be deceived that intend to pull out the Head, for they will pull out the Staff only.

How to make Fire-Wheels to be caft out of Mens Hands:

For the making of these, you are to use these Ingredients: Take four pound of *Powder* in Dust, one pound of *Charcoal*, dust, two pound of *Tar*; two pound of *Salt-peter*; and one pound of *Rozen*: All these Ingredients being well incorporated,

To

## -160

# The Seamans Grammar.

VIII. How to take the Distance between Two (or more) Places, without coming near any of them, by a Two Foot Joynt Rule.



Let the two remote Places given, be A and B, whole diftance I would know, but I cannot approach, or come near either of them, and I have no other *Instrument* but my *Two Foot form Rule*; however, I make choice of a Place at C, from whence I can fee both the Places A and B, and there I fet up a *Staff* whereon to reft my *Rule*, and opening it to a *Square Angle*, I look by one fide of it, till I efpie my first place, at A, and there keeping it fast, and level, I look by the other fide of the *Ruler*, and cause a *Mark* to be fet up in a right Inches: Now for the height of the Caftle Wall, you must work by the Rule of Proportion thus: Saying,

As C E, the Length of the Shadow of my Staffe 46 Inches,

Is in proportion to the kength of Staffe CD, 38 Inches.

So is A C, the Length of the Shadow of the Wall 360 Inches. To 43 ; inches, for the height of the Castle Wall; which

you may call 436 Inches.

For, If you multiply 46, the Length of the Shadow of the Staffe, by 360, the Length of the Shadow of the Wall, the Product will be 16560, which being divided by 38, Inches the length of the Staffe, the Quotient will be 4351° Inches, which reduced into Feet is 36 foot 3 Inches and 3° of an Inch which you may call 4 Inches, and 10 high is the Caftle Wall:

II: How to take the <u>height of a Watch-Tower</u>, by the Shadow, when you cannot come to the bottome of it, to meafure the length of the Shadow.



B C, fo that I cannot come to measure the Shadow thereof; However,

I come near to the Moat fide, and there I find the Shadow of the top of the Tower to caft at C, where I erect my Staffe CG, and that cafts its Shadow to H; I measure the Length of my Staffe, and I find it 4 foot, or 48 Inches; and the Length of the Shadow thereof C H, I find to be 32 Inches, these two I note down.

Then, fome time after, (when the Sun is lower) I come again to the place, and find the Shadow of the top of the Tower to caft at D, where again I erect the fame Staffe of 4 foot long, and find that it cafts its Shadow to E, and that the length of the Shadow thereof, D E, is 4 foot 5 inches, or 53 inches and fomewhat better, this I alfo fet down, and then I measure the diftance between the two places where the Tower cafts its Shadow, at the First and Second time of my Observation, namely, the diftance C E, and find it to be 10 foot, or 120 inches. And now having all these numbers fet down, I come to find the Height of the Tower A B, by help of the Rale of Proportion, as followeth.

- (1) As D E, the length of the Shadow of the Staffe D F at the Second Observation, 53 Inches:
- Is to 48 Inches, the length of the Staffe;

So is 10 foot (or 120 Inches) the Length of the Shadow between the two places of Observation C and D,

To 108 Inches, or 9 foot.

Which number 9 foot, or 108 Inches, fet down

And lay again by Proportion,

(2) As 48 Inches the Length of the Staffe G C,

Is to 10 foot (or 120 Inches) the diffance between the two places of Observation C and D;

So is 108 Inches (the Number before found)

To 270 Inches, the Height of the Tower, which reduced into Feet is 2 2 foot 6 Inches.

III. How

**Of Gunnery.** So is 48 inches, the length of the Staff F H: To 64 inches; for the Diftance F G,

For as often, as K F, is contained in F H, So often is F H, contained in F G.

VII. How to take the Breadth of a River by the Square.



There is a River MPO, whole breadth I defire to know: Upon the brow of the River at M, I fet up my Staff ML, which is 60 inches (or 5 foot) long, and hanging my Square upon the end thereof at L, I look by the Side thereof, till I fee the Brow of the River on the other fide at O, and there fixing my Square, I extend a Tbrid by the Side thereof, from L to N, then measuring the diffance L N, I find it to be 15 inches (or 1 foot 2 inches) then I fay by Proportion,

As N M, the diftance measured; 15 inches Is to L M, the length of the Staff 6 inches. So is L M 60 inches.

To MO, 240 inches, (or 20 foot, for the breadth of the Ri-River MO.

As 12 foot, the Length of the Javelin DA,

158

- Is to 24 foot and a half, the diffance measured upon the Plaform AE.
- So is 112, the height of the Platform and Javelin together BD.
- To 228 foot 8 Inches, for the diftance B C.
- VI. How to take the distance from the place of your standing upon level Ground, to any Tree, Tower, or other thing, remote from you, though you cannot comencer the fame, by your Square.



CTanding at F, I fee a Coundit head at G, whole diffance I from F where I ftand, I would know, but I cannot come neer it for a *River* between F and G; However,

At F, I crect a Staffe of 4 foot high, (or 48 Inches) as FH, upon the end whereof I hang the Angle of my Square, and I look by the fide thereof, till I fee the foot of the Coundit-bead at G, and fixing my Square there, I extend a line from H, by the fide of the Square, till it touch the Ground at K: Then meafuring the diffance between F and K, I find it to be 2 foot or 36 Inches : Then by the Rule of Proportion I fay,

As 36, the diftance K F, Is to F H, the Length of the Staffe 48 Inches:

Of Gunnery. 155

111. How to take the Altitude of any upright building, or the like, by a Bowle of Water.



Ravelleing a long the Road I fee a May-pole, as K L, the height whereof I would gladly know, but having no Geometrical Instrument, I procure a Bowl of fair Water, which I fet down upon the ground, at M. And then, when the Water is ftill in the Bowl, I go backward, in a right line from the Maypole, till I fee the Shadow of the top of the May pole in the middle of the Water; which I do when I come at N, and at N, I make a Mark upon the Ground : Then do I measure the distance from the foot of the May-pole at L, to the Bowl of Water at M, and find it to be 175 Inches: Alfo, I measure the distance from the Bowl of Water at M, to the place of my standing at N, and find that to be 72 Inches: Then I measure the Height. of my eye from the Ground O N, and find that to be 60 Inches; These things known, I fay by the Rule of Propertion.

If 72 Inches diffance MN, give 60 Inches Altitude NO; What Altitude shall 175 Inches the distance L M give ? Anfwer 145 6° Inche. Y 2 For

For, if you multiply 175 by 60, the Product will be 10500, which divide by 72, the quotient will be 14552, that is almost 146 Inches, which is, 12 foot 2 Inches for the height of the May pole K L, required.

156

IV. How to take the beight of any upright Building, that is approachable, by two Sticks or Rulers joyned together, Square-wife.



L Et P Q be fome Strudiure, standing upright upon plain Ground, whole height you require.

Go unto fome convenient Court, Tard, Garden, or other piece of level Ground adjoyning to the building to be measured, then take your Square in both your hands, holding it perpendicular, which you may do, by having a Thread and Plummet as T V, hung upon a pin near the top of the Square at T, Then keeping it in this posture, go backwards, or forwards, (as occasion requires) till your Eye being at X, you can fee the other end of your Square at T, and the Top of the Building at P, all in one Right-Line, which when you do, make a stand, as at S Then Then measure the height of your Eye from the Ground X S, with a firing, and fet that length upon the Ground from the place of your flanding at S, to R: Then measure the diffance from R, to Q, for that shall be equal to the height of the build ing P Q, and is here 210 foot.

Of Gunnery.

V. How by help of this Square, flanding npon a Platform of a known height, to find the diftance from the Platform, to any Tree, River, or other Object that is remote from you,



L Et A B be a Platform, whofe Perpendicular height is 100 foot, being upon the top thereof at A, I would know how far the Oake at C, is diffance from the bottom of the Platform at B.

Upon the top of the *Platform* at A, I erect a Pike or *faveline* 12 foot long, more or lefs, upon which, I hang the *Angle* of my Square : And I look with my *Eye* at D, along the fide of my Square, till I fee the bottom of the *Oake* at C, and in this pofition I fix my Square, with a *Screw* or the like, to the head of the *faveline*: Then from D,I extend a thread or *Line* by the *fide* of my Square, til it touch the *Platform* at E, and then I measure the diffance upon the *Platform* from A to E, and find, it to be 24 foot, 6 Inches, then by proportion I fay

As.

161

right Line from C, at a competent diffance from C, as at D, i so foot, then close in your Rule, till by the fide thereof you fee your fecond place at B, keep your Rule at that Angle:

Then having a freet of Paper, or upon a Board, as Figure IX. draw two Right Lines thereon, as K L, and L M, making a Right (or Square Angle) at L.

Then bring your Ruler, (it being ftill kept at the Angle it was when you looked to B,) and lay the Center of your Ruler upon L, and by the fide of it draw a Line L M, and, becaufe your measured diffance between C and D was 150 foot, take 150 quarters of Inches (150 of any equal parts that you have upon your Ruler) and fet them down upon your Paper or Board, from L to M.

Then take your Rule and go to D, and fet the Center of it upon the Staff, look by one fide thereof to C, and by the other to A, then bring the Rule to the Board, and lay the Center thereof on M, and one fide upon the line M L, and by the other fide, draw a Line at length as the Line M O, croffing the Line L K in O, fo shall O, upon your Board, represent the Place A in the Field : Again, Take your Rule, and go to D, and there refting it upon the Staff, look by one edge to A, and by the other to B, and keeping it at that Angle, bring it to the Beard, and lay one Side upon the Line MO, and by the other draw the Line M.P. croffing the Line L N in the Point P, fo shall P represent upon the Paper the Second Place B in the Field, and being measured upon the fame Scale whereof L M was measured, it will be found to be 250 foot. and that is the diffance from A to B. And by this means you may find the diffances of all\*the Places in the Figure, if you measure them upon the same Scale as L M, or O P were meafured, and fo thall you find

The Diftance  $\begin{pmatrix} L & O \\ L & P \\ M & O \\ M & P \end{pmatrix}$  to Contain  $\begin{cases} 128 \\ 317 \\ 200 \\ 220 \\ 200 \\ 220 \\ 200 \\ 220 \\ 200$  $\mathbf{z}$ X. How

X. How to take the Diftance between One or more Places, by a TenFoot Rod (divided into Inches) only.



S Tanding at A, I would know how far it is to the Tree at B, though I cannot come near it.

Standing at A, I measure in a right Line from thence 30 foot, from A to s: And then looking towards D, I measure out 30 foot more, and from A to C; and measuring the diftance s C, I find it to be 25 foot, which laid down upon Paper do make the *Triangle* A C s, of which draw the Line A s out at Length,

Then standing at C, I measure in a right Line towards B, 25 foot, from C to b, and the distance between a and b, I measure.

# Of Gunnery.

measure to be 20 foot, which makes the Triangle Cab, Draw the Side Cb at Length, till it cross the former Line Aa, extended in B; So shall the Line AB, (being measured by the fame Scale that the other Lines were laid down by) be found to contain 82 foot, and such is the distance between A and B. 163

And according to this *Method*, may the *diftances* from feveral Places be meafured, As in Figure XL Where ftanding at G and H, you may find the *diftance* between E and F; and alfo, all the other intermediate diffances, as from G or H, to E or F, as alfo the diftances GE, GF, HE, HF, *Oc.* as by the Figure is evident:



·	A Description of a Sh	in with all her Tacklin	g,
. X. B. And ma (	Main Maft and run-	3 The Main Horfe of Tackle.	32 The Fore Topfar's Tye and
	ning Rigging.	34 The Tye of the main Topfail	Teer.
ning Rigging.	ming Kigging.	Jeers.	33 The Tard of the fore Topfail.
	I Main-maft & main Topmaft	35 The main Topgallant Sails	34 The Pore Horje and Lackie.
Izan Mast or Top-mast.	2 Main yard and Main Sail.	Tye and Jeers.	S S A MA JOI OF
2. Mizan Tard and	3 Main Topfail yard and Sail.	E A & rigging	and Jeer.
Sail.	A Topgallant yard and Sail.	Foremast & rigging.	36 The Fore Tacks.
e Crofs tree yard.	e Tongallant Crofs-trees of Cab	1 Foremast and Topmast.	The Bow sprit and Rig-
izan Topfail yard and Sail	6 Main Lifts.	2 Fore yard and Sail.	aina
izan Top and Cap.	7 Main Topjail Lifts.	3 Fore Topfail yard and Sail.	
	8 Topgallant Lifts.	4 Topgallant yard and Sail.	1 Bowfprit.
izan Topfail Sheets.		5 Fore Lifts.	2 Spritfail yard and Sail,
izan Shroway.	10 Main Sheets.	6 Fore Topfail Lifis.	3 Spritfail Top and Crofs-trees
lizen Topmast Shrowds.	t t Main Bopplings.	7 Fore Topgallant Lifts.	4 Spritfail Topfail y and Gfail.
Mizan Chains.	12 Main Clewgarnets.	8 Crofs-trees and Cap.	s Spritfail Topmast. 6 Spritfail Sheets. (fail yard.
the Gallery.	13 Main Stay.	9 Fore Braces.	7 Standing Lifts for the Sprit-
Tafferail. (Enfign.	14 Main Shrowds. (Plaits.	10 Fore Topfail Braces.	8 Spritfail Braces.
The Cap Enfign-flaff and	15 Main Chains and Chain-	11 Fore Topgallant Braces.	9 Spritfail Sbeets.
the Quarter Deck.	16 Backstays for the main 1 op:	12 Fore Sheets and Tacks.	10 Spritfail Clewlines.
the balf Deck	Maft.	13 Fore Bowlines.	11 Spritfail Topfail Braces.
The Mizan Sheet.	17 Main Topmast Stay.	14 Fore Topfail Bowlines.	
Mizan Topfail Braces.	18 Main Topfail Braces.	15 Fore Topgallant Bowlines.	12 Spritfail Topmast Shrewds.
Mizan Topfail Bowlines.	19 Main Topfail Clewlines.	16 Fore Clemgarnets.	14 Fack Staff and Fack.
Mizan Topfail Clewlins.	20 Main Topfail Bowlines	17 Fore Topfail Clewlines. 18 Fore Shrowds.	15 The Ships Head.
Mizan Brailes.	21 Main Topmast Shrowds.		16 The Cat Head.
Mizan Topmasts Stay.	27 Main Topgallant Shrowds	20 Fore Topgallant Shrowds.	
Mizan Stay,	23 Topgallant Clewlines.	21 For: Stay.	18 The fore Caftle.
Mizan Sheet.	24 Topgallant Braces.	22 Fore Topmaft Stay.	19 The Crain line.
Tards of Oars for the Boat	25 Topgallant Bowlines. 26 The borfe for the main Top-	an Fore Topeallant Star ( yar	d ao The Horfe on the Bowsprit.
The Ships Boat.		24 Horfe for the fore Topfai	it 21 Steps on the fide.
A holdingline for Pennant.	fail yard. 27 Main Topfail Leathlines.	15 Fore Topgallant Clewlines	. 22 The main Spritfail. feers.
Mizan Bopplin.	28 Main Topfail Buntlines.	26 Fore Topmast Back Staies.	
A Mizan Crowfoot	28 Main Topjart Branches	0 27 Fore Chains and Plaits.	24 The Spritfail Topfail Clew-
Crofs tree Braces.	the Stay.	28 Fore Topfail Leathlines.	lines.
Mizan Tack.	30 Main Tacks	29 Fore Topfail Buntlines.	25 The Spritfail Topfails Jeer.
The Laniards.		t. Pore Leathlines.	26 The Spritfail Topfail Crow-
The Mizan Topmast Crow foot.	32 The main Tye and fallof th	e 21 Fore Buntlines.	27 The Trens Bawfprit. (foot.

**Binding Instructions:** Cut along the line to the right. Fold inward at dotted line at margins of page, such that the above illustration is inside the folded page.

Insert between pages 18 and 19 (Quire D) with printed side ("A Description of a Ship with all her Tackling") facing page 18.

